

# L'extension fontspec

## Sélection de fontes pour Xe<sub>Λ</sub>TeX et LuaTeX

WILL ROBERTSON et KHALED HOSNY  
will.robertson@latex-project.org

24/09/2015      v2.4e

### Table des matières

<b>1 Historique</b>	<b>1</b>	6.1 Default settings . . . . .	12
<b>2 Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>	6.2 Default settings from a file	13
2.1 À propos de ce manuel . .	2	6.3 Changing the currently selected features . . . . .	14
2.2 Remerciements . . . . .	2	6.4 Priority of feature selection	14
<b>3 Chargement de l'extension et options</b>	<b>2</b>	6.5 Different features for different font shapes . . . . .	15
3.1 Ajustements sur les fontes mathématiques . . . . .	3	6.6 Different features for different font sizes . . . . .	16
3.2 Configuration . . . . .	3	<b>7 Font independent options</b>	<b>17</b>
3.3 Alertes . . . . .	3	7.1 Colour . . . . .	17
<b>I Sélection générale de fontes</b>	<b>3</b>	7.2 Scale . . . . .	18
<b>4 Sélection de fontes</b>	<b>4</b>	7.3 Interword space . . . . .	18
4.1 Par nom de fonte . . . . .	4	7.4 Post-punctuation space . .	19
4.2 Par nom de fichier . . . . .	5	7.5 The hyphenation character	19
<b>5 Nouvelles commandes pour la sélection de familles de fonte</b>	<b>6</b>	7.6 Optical font sizes . . . . .	19
5.1 Contrôle accru sur la sélection de la forme des fontes . . . . .	7	<b>II OpenType</b>	<b>21</b>
5.2 Specifically choosing the NFSS family . . . . .	8	<b>8 Introduction</b>	<b>21</b>
5.3 Choosing additional NFSS font faces . . . . .	9	8.1 How to select font features	21
5.4 Math(s) fonts . . . . .	10	<b>9 Complete listing of OpenType font features</b>	<b>22</b>
5.5 Miscellaneous font selecting details . . . . .	11	9.1 Ligatures . . . . .	22
<b>6 Selecting font features</b>	<b>12</b>	9.2 Letters . . . . .	22
		9.3 Numbers . . . . .	23
		9.4 Contextuals . . . . .	24
		9.5 Vertical Position . . . . .	24
		9.6 Fractions . . . . .	25
		9.7 Stylistic Set variations . .	26
		9.8 Character Variants . . . . .	26
		9.9 Alternates . . . . .	27
		9.10 Style . . . . .	28



## 1 Historique

Cette extension a débuté sa vie comme une interface  $\LaTeX$  pour sélectionner les fontes présentes sur le système MacOSX dans  $X_{\LaTeX}$  de Jonathan Kew, la première variante largement utilisée de  $\TeX$  gérant Unicode. Avec le temps,  $X_{\LaTeX}$  fut étendu pour supporter les fontes Opentype puis fut porté en un programme multiplate-forme pour pouvoir fonctionner avec windows et Linux.

Plus récemment,  $\LuaTeX$  est rapidement devenu le moteur  $\TeX$  du moment ; il supporte les encodages Unicode, les fontes Opentype et ouvre les mécaniques internes de  $\TeX$  par le biais du langage de programmation Lua.  $\ConTeXt$  Mk. IV de Hans Hagen est une réécriture de son puissant système de composition, tirant pleinement parti des capacités de  $\LuaTeX$  tel le support des fontes ; une partie centrale de son travail en ce domaine a été extraite pour être utilisée pour d'autres systèmes de commandes  $\TeX$  et ceci a permis à `fontspec` d'être adapté à  $\LaTeX$  lorsqu'il tourne avec le moteur  $\LuaTeX$ .

## 2 Introduction

L'extension `fontspec` permet à l'utilisateur de  $X_{\LaTeX}$  ou  $\LuaTeX$  de charger des fontes OpenType dans un document  $\LaTeX$ . L'installation de fontes n'est pas nécessaire et les fonctionnalités associées aux fontes sont sélectionnables et utilisables à merci tout au long du document.

Sans `fontspec`, il est nécessaire d'écrire de lourds fichiers de définitions de fontes pour  $\LaTeX$ , car la mécanique de sélection des fontes de  $\LaTeX$  (connue sous le nom « `nrss` ») doit faire beaucoup de choses dans les coulisses pour offrir des commandes simples comme `\emph` ou `\bfseries`. Avec un nombre incalculable de polices maintenant disponibles, toutefois, il devient de moins en moins souhaitable d'écrire ces fichiers de définition de fontes (`.fd`) pour chaque fonte à utiliser.

L'extension `fontspec` étant conçue pour fonctionner dans différents modes, cette documentation est divisée en sections pensées pour être relativement indépendantes. Néanmoins, les fonctionnalités basiques se comportent toutes de la même manière, ceci afin que les utilisateurs de `fontspec` avec  $X_{\LaTeX}$  puissent avoir peu ou pas de difficultés à basculer vers  $\LuaTeX$ .

Ce manuel peut rentrer dans des niveaux de détails importants, dans la mesure où il y en a beaucoup d'éléments fins à présenter. Voir les documents d'exemple `fontspec-xetex.tex` et `fontspec-luatex.tex` pour un exemple minimal complet avec chaque moteur.

### 2.1 À propos de ce manuel

Ce document est composé avec  $\pdf\LaTeX$  en utilisant des exemples précompilés qui ont été générés par  $X_{\LaTeX}$  ou par  $\LuaTeX$ . Vous pouvez régénérer ces exemples en retranchant les sous-répertoires `doc-files/` et en composant le manuel avec l'instruction suivante :

```
pdflatex -shell-escape fontspec.dtx
```

Notez que la plupart des exemples utilisent des fontes qui ne sont pas inclus dans  $\TeX$  Live ou  $\MiKTeX$ , et que certaines d'entre elles sont des fontes non libres devant être achetées.

Je souhaiterais réduire le nombre des fontes non libres utilisées dans ce manuel. Si vous avez connaissance de fontes libres qui pourraient être utilisées comme alternatives aux fontes

de ce document, n’hésitez pas à me les suggérer. Finalement, si des aspects de cette documentation ne sont pas assez clairs ou vous souhaitez suggérer d’autres exemples, écrivez-moi ! (Les contributions sont tout particulièrement bienvenues.)

## 2.2 Remerciements

Cette extension n’aurait pas été possible sans le soutien – survenu tôt dans le projet et continu depuis lors — de l’auteur de  $X_{\text{L}}\text{TeX}$ , Jonathan Kew. Quand j’ai commencé cette extension, il m’a guidé dans la bonne direction à de nombreuses reprises.

J’ai eu de très bons retours année après année pour des demandes de fonctionnalités, des questions sur la documentation, des rapports d’erreurs, des suggestions de fontes, tout ceci de la part de nombreuses personnes de par le monde. Merci beaucoup à vous tous.

Merci à David Perry et Markus Böhning pour les nombreuses améliorations apportées à la documentation et à David Perry une fois encore pour avoir contribué au texte de l’une des sections de ce manuel.

Je remercie tout particulièrement Khaled Hosny, qui a été la force motrice derrière le support de  $\text{Lua}\text{TeX}$ , conduisant finalement à la version 2.0 de cette extension.

## 3 Chargement de l’extension et options

Pour une utilisation simple, aucune option d’extension n’est requise :

```
\usepackage{fontspec}
```

Les options d’extension seront présentées par la suite ; quelques détails préliminaires sont ici examinés :

**xunicode** L’extension `xunicode` de Ross Moore est maintenant automatiquement chargée pour les utilisateurs de  $X_{\text{L}}\text{TeX}$  et  $\text{Lua}\text{TeX}$ . Cette extension apporte une rétro-compatibilité avec les méthodes de  $\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{TeX}$  pour accéder aux caractères spéciaux et accents (par exemple, `\%`, `\$`, `\textbullet`, `\”` et ainsi de suite) ainsi qu’à de nombreux autres caractères Unicode.

**Pour les utilisateurs de  $X_{\text{L}}\text{TeX}$**  L’extension `xltxtra` ajoute quelques fonctionnalités mineures à  $X_{\text{L}}\text{TeX}$ , incluant, par le biais de l’extension `metalogo`, la commande `\XeTeX` composant le logo de  $X_{\text{L}}\text{TeX}$ . Alors que cette extension était précédemment recommandée, elle présente bien moins d’intérêt de nos jours et n’est généralement pas requise. Pensez à consulter sa documentation pour vérifier si ses fonctionnalités sont nécessaires ou pas avant de la charger.

**Pour les utilisateurs de  $\text{Lua}\text{TeX}$**  Afin de faire aux fontes par leur nom plutôt que par leur nom de fichier (e.g., « Latin Modern Roman » plutôt que « ec-lmr10 »), vous pourrez avoir besoin d’exécuter le script `luaotfload-tool` distribué avec l’extension `luaotfload`. Notez que si vous n’exécutez pas ce script au préalable, la première fois que vous essaieriez de compiler un document le traitement va rester figé jusqu’à plusieurs minutes (mais uniquement la première fois). N’hésitez pas à consulter la documentation de `luaotfload` pour plus d’informations.

**babel** L’extension *babel* n’est pas vraiment compatible ! En particulier le vietnamien, le grec et l’hébreu *a minima* ne fonctionnent pas correctement, de ce que j’ai pu constater. Cependant, la situation devrait être meilleure avec les langues cyrilliques et latines — `fontspec` fait en sorte que ces fontes soient chargées correctement. L’extension `polyglossia` est recommandée en tant que version de remplacement moderne de *babel*.

### 3.1 Ajustements sur les fontes mathématiques

Par défaut, fontspec ajuste la configuration des mathématiques standards de  $\text{\LaTeX}$  afin de conserver les bons symboles de Computer Modern quand la fonte romaine change. Cependant, ce comportement est évité si une autre extension chargeant d'autres fontes mathématiques est utilisée (telle que mathpazo ou l'extension unicode-math). Si vous observez que fontspec change de manière incorrecte les fontes mathématiques alors qu'il n'aurait pas du intervenir, utilisez l'option d'extension [no-math] pour supprimer manuellement ces fontes mathématiques.

### 3.2 Configuration

Si vous souhaitez personnaliser n'importe quelle partie de l'interface de fontspec, vous pouvez le faire en créant votre propre fichier fontspec.cfg, ce dernier étant automatiquement chargé s'il est trouvé par  $\text{\XeTeX}$  ou  $\text{\LuaTeX}$ . Un fichier fontspec.cfg intégrant un petit nombre de paramétrages par défaut est distribué avec fontspec.

Pour paramétrer fontspec à votre convenance, utilisez ce fichier .cfg standard comme point de départ ou écrivez le vôtre en partant de rien. Ensuite, placez-le dans le même répertoire que votre document principal pour des cas ponctuels ou placez-le dans des répertoires dans lesquels  $\text{\XeTeX}$  ou  $\text{\LuaTeX}$  cherchent par défaut sinon ; par exemple avec  $\text{\MacTeX}$  : `~/Library/texmf/tex/latex/`.

L'option d'extension [no-config] supprime le chargement du fichier fontspec.cfg en toutes circonstances.

### 3.3 Alertes

Cette extension peut générer de nombreuses alertes qui peuvent être sans risques si vous savez ce que vous faites. Utilisez l'option d'extension [quiet] pour faire écrire ces avertissements dans le fichier journal (.log) à la place.

Utilisez l'option d'extension [silent] pour complètement supprimer ces alertes si vous ne souhaitez pas encombrer le fichier .log.

## Première partie

# Sélection générale de fontes

Cette section concerne les différentes commandes qui peuvent être utilisées pour sélectionner des fontes.

```
\fontspec{<nom-fonte>}[<fonctionnalités-fonte>]  
\setmainfont{<nom-fonte>}[<fonctionnalités-fonte>]  
\setsansfont{<nom-fonte>}[<fonctionnalités-fonte>]  
\setmonofont{<nom-fonte>}[<fonctionnalités-fonte>]  
\newfontfamily<commande>{<nom-fonte>}[<fonctionnalités-fonte>]
```

Ce sont les principales commandes de sélection de fonte de cette extension. La commande `\fontspec` sélectionne une fonte pour un usage **one-time** ; toutes les autres servent à définir les fontes standards utilisées par un document, comme illustré dans Exemple 1. Ici, les tailles des fontes ont été choisies pour égaliser la taille de leur minuscules. La fonctionnalité Scale sera présentée par la suite en [Section 7 on page 17](#), en incluant les méthodes pour un dimensionnement automatique.

---

Exemple 1 : Chargement de fontes par défaut, sans sérif et à chasse fixe.

---

	<code>\setmainfont{TeX Gyre Bonum}</code>
	<code>\setsansfont{Latin Modern Sans}[Scale=MatchLowercase]</code>
	<code>\setmonofont{Inconsolata}[Scale=MatchLowercase]</code>
Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs	<code>\rmfamily Buvez de ce whisky que le patron juge fameux. \par</code>
Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs	<code>\sffamily Buvez de ce whisky que le patron juge fameux. \par</code>
Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs	<code>\ttfamily Buvez de ce whisky que le patron juge fameux.</code>

---

L'argument de fonctionnalités des fontes accepte des listes de paires  $\langle \text{fonctionnalité-fonte} \rangle = \langle \text{option} \rangle$  séparées par des virgules ; ces arguments sont décrits par la suite :

- pour des fonctionnalités de fonte générales, voir [Section 7 on page 17](#)
- pour les fontes OpenType, voir la partie [II on page 21](#)
- pour les fonctionnalités de fontes propres à Xe<sub>Λ</sub>TeX, voir la partie [IV on page 36](#)
- pour les fonctionnalités de fontes propres à LuaTeX, voir la partie [III on page 36](#)
- pour les fonctionnalité pour les fontes AAT dans Xe<sub>Λ</sub>TeX, voir [Section 12 on page 38](#)

## 4 Sélection de fontes

Dans LuaTeX et Xe<sub>Λ</sub>TeX, les fontes peuvent être sélectionnées par leur « nom de fonte » comme par leur « nom de fichier ».

### 4.1 Par nom de fonte

Les fontes connues de LuaTeX ou de Xe<sub>Λ</sub>TeX peuvent être chargées en utilisant leur nom standard, celui que vous diriez à voix haute, tel *Times New Roman* ou *Adobe Garamond*. « Connues de » dans ce cas signifie « existent dans un « répertoire de fontes standard » comme `~/Library/Fonts` sur Mac OS X, ou `C:\Windows\Fonts` sur Windows.

L'exemple le plus simple pourrait être quelque chose comme :

```
\setmainfont{Cambria}[ ... ]
```

dans lequel les fontes grasses et italiques sont automatiquement trouvées (si elles existent) et sont immédiatement accessibles avec les commandes usuelles `\textit` et `\textbf`.

À FAIRE : ajouter une explication pour dire comment trouver le « nom d'une fonte ».

### 4.2 Par nom de fichier

Xe<sub>Λ</sub>TeX et LuaTeX permettent également de charger les fontes par leur nom de fichier au lieu de leur nom de fonte. Lorsque vous avez une très grande collection de fontes, vous ne souhaitez parfois pas les voir installées dans votre répertoire de fontes de votre système. Dans ce cas, il est souvent plus pratique de les charger depuis un autre répertoire de votre disque. Cette technique est également nécessaire dans Xe<sub>Λ</sub>TeX lors du chargement de fontes OpenType qui sont présentes dans votre distribution TeX par exemple `/usr/local/texlive/2013/texmf-dist/fonts/opentype/public`. Les fontes dans de tels répertoires sont visibles pour Xe<sub>Λ</sub>TeX mais elles ne peuvent être chargées que par leur nom de fichier ; LuaTeX n'a pas cette restriction.

Avec la sélection de fontes par nom de fichier, toute fonte présente dans les répertoires parcourus par défaut peut être utilisée directement (y compris le répertoire courant) sans avoir à définir explicitement la localisation du fichier de fonte sur le disque dur.

Les fontes sélectionnées par nom de fichier doivent avoir leurs variantes grasse et italique précisées explicitement.

```
\setmainfont{texgyrepagella-regular.otf}[
  BoldFont      = texgyrepagella-bold.otf ,
  ItalicFont     = texgyrepagella-italic.otf ,
  BoldItalicFont = texgyrepagella-bolditalic.otf ]
```

L'extension `fontspec` sait ici que la fonte doit être trouvée avec son nom de fichier du fait de la présence de l'extension « `.otf` ». Une alternative est de spécifier l'extension séparément, comme suit :

```
\setmainfont{texgyrepagella-regular}[
  Extension      = .otf ,
  BoldFont       = texgyrepagella-bold ,
  ... ]
```

Une abréviation peut aussi être appliquée aux noms des fontes sur la base de l'argument obligatoire, « nom de fonte » :

```
\setmainfont{texgyrepagella}[
  Extension      = .otf ,
  UprightFont    = *-regular ,
  BoldFont       = *-bold ,
  ... ]
```

Dans le cas ci-dessus, « `texgyrepagella` » n'est plus le nom de la fonte mais sert à construire le nom de fichier pour chaque forme; le symbole `*` est remplacé par « `texgyrepagella` ». Notez que, dans ce cas, l'option `UprightFont` est nécessaire pour construire le nom de la fonte normale.

Pour charger une fonte qui n'est pas dans un des répertoires parcourus par défaut, sa localisation dans le système de fichier doit être spécifiée avec la fonctionnalité `Path` :

```
\setmainfont{texgyrepagella}[
  Path           = /Users/will/Fonts/ ,
  UprightFont    = *-regular ,
  BoldFont       = *-bold ,
  ... ]
```

Notez que  $\text{Xe}\text{L}\text{a}\text{T}\text{E}\text{X}$  et  $\text{Lua}\text{L}\text{a}\text{T}\text{E}\text{X}$  peuvent charger la fonte sans que l'extension soit précisée, mais `fontspec` doit, lui, le savoir; ceci peut être indiqué en déclarant que la fonte existe dans un endroit externe, « `ExternalLocation` » :

```
\setmainfont{texgyrepagella-regular}[
  ExternalLocation ,
  BoldFont         = texgyrepagella-bold ,
  ... ]
```

Pour être honnête, `Path` et `ExternalLocation` sont une même fonctionnalité sous deux noms différents. La première peut être donnée sans argument et la seconde avec; les deux noms existent juste pour ajouter en clarté.

---

Exemple 2 : Définition de nouvelles familles de fonte.

---

This is a <i>note</i> .	<pre>\newfontfamily\notefont{Kurier} \notefont Ceci est une \emph{note}.</pre>
-------------------------	--

---



---

Exemple 3 : Définition d'une **font face** isolée.

---

<i>where is all the vegemite</i>	<pre>\newfontface\fancy{Hoefler Text Italic}% [Contextuals={WordInitial,WordFinal}] \fancy o est toute la vegemite % \emph, \textbf, etc., aucune ne marche.</pre>
----------------------------------	--

---

## 5 Nouvelles commandes pour la sélection de familles de fonte

```
\newfontfamily\⟨bascule-fonte⟩{⟨nom-fonte⟩}[⟨fontionnalités-fonte⟩]
\newfontface\⟨bascule-fonte⟩{⟨nom-fonte⟩}[⟨fontionnalités-fonte⟩]
```

Dans les cas où une fonte particulière associée à une fonctionnalité est réutilisée à plusieurs reprises dans un document, il n'est guère efficace de passer par `\fontspec` à chaque utilisation. Alors que la commande `\fontspec` ne définit pas une nouvelle instance de fonte après avoir été appelée déjà une première fois, les options de fonctionnalité doivent par contre être analysées et traitées.

`\newfontfamily`

Pour cette raison, de nouvelles commandes peuvent être créées pour charger une famille de fontes avec la commande `\newfontfamily`, illustrée en Exemple 2. Cette commande sert à créer des commandes qui seront utilisées de la même façon que `\rmfamily`, par exemple. Si vous voulez créer une commande qui change uniquement la fonte de l'argument intérieur (soit le même comportement que `\emph`), définissez-la avec les commandes  $\text{\LaTeX}$  classiques :

```
\newcommand\textnote[1]{\notefont #1}
\textnote{Ceci est une note.}
```

Notez que les doubles accolades sont intentionnelles : la paire intérieure sert à délimiter l'étendue du changement de fonte.

`\newfontface`

Parfois, seule une forme particulière de **font face** est souhaitée, sans que les variantes italique ou grasse soient automatiquement sélectionnées. C'est couramment le cas lors de la sélection d'une fonte italique fantaisie qui dispose d'ornements non disponibles dans la forme romaine. `\newfontface` est utile pour ce cas, comme illustré en Exemple 3, ce qui précisé en [Section 12.4 on page 39](#).

Commentaire pour les utilisateurs avancés : Les commandes définies par `\newfontface` et `\newfontfamily` incluent leur information d'encodage, si bien que, même si le document est paramétré pour utiliser l'encodage historique de  $\text{\TeX}$ , ces commandes fonctionneront toujours correctement. Par exemple,

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{fontspec}
\newfontfamily\unicodefont{Lucida Grande}
\usepackage{mathpazo}
\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\begin{document}
```



---

Example 4 : Explicit selection of the bold font.

---

Helvetica Neue UltraLight	\fontspec{Helvetica Neue UltraLight}%
<i>Helvetica Neue UltraLight Italic</i>	[BoldFont={Helvetica Neue}]
Helvetica Neue	Helvetica Neue UltraLight \\\
<i>Helvetica Neue Italic</i>	{\itshape Helvetica Neue UltraLight Italic} \\\
	{\bfseries Helvetica Neue } \\\
	{\bfseries\itshape Helvetica Neue Italic} \\\

---

```

Une fonte historique de \TeX. {\unicodefont Une fonte unicode.}
\end{document}

```

## 5.1 Contrôle accru sur la sélection de la forme des fontes



```

BoldFont = <font name>
ItalicFont = <font name>
BoldItalicFont = <font name>
SlantedFont = <font name>
BoldSlantedFont = <font name>
SmallCapsFont = <font name>

```

The automatic bold, italic, and bold italic font selections will not be adequate for the needs of every font : while some fonts mayn’t even have bold or italic shapes, in which case a skilled (or lucky) designer may be able to chose well-matching accompanying shapes from a different font altogether, others can have a range of bold and italic fonts to chose among. The BoldFont and ItalicFont features are provided for these situations. If only one of these is used, the bold italic font is requested as the default from the *new* font. See Example 4.

If a bold italic shape is not defined, or you want to specify *both* custom bold and italic shapes, the BoldItalicFont feature is provided.

### 5.1.1 Input shorthands

For those cases that the base font name is repeated, you can replace it with an asterisk. (This has been shown previously in Section 4.2 on page 5.) For example, some space can be saved instead of writing ‘Baskerville SemiBold’ :

```
\setmainfont{Baskerville}[BoldFont={* SemiBold}]
```

As a matter of fact, this feature can also be used for the upright font too :

```
\setmainfont{Baskerville}[UprightFont={* SemiBold},BoldFont={* Bold}]
```

### 5.1.2 Small caps and slanted font shapes

For the rare situations where a font family will have slanted *and* italic shapes, these may be specified separately using the analogous features SlantedFont and BoldSlantedFont. Without these, however, the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X font switches for slanted (\textsl, \slshape) will default to the italic shape.

Old-fashioned font families used to distribute their small caps glyphs in separate fonts due to the limitations on the number of glyphs allowed in the PostScript Type 1 format. Such fonts may be used by declaring the `SmallCapsFont` of the family you are specifying :

```
\fontspec{Minion MM Roman}[
  SmallCapsFont={Minion MM Small Caps & Oldstyle Figures}
]
Roman 123 \\\textsc{Small caps 456}
```

In fact, you may specify the small caps font for each individual bold and italic shape as in

```
\fontspec{ <upright> }[
  UprightFeatures    = { SmallCapsFont={ <sc> } } ,
  BoldFeatures       = { SmallCapsFont={ <bf sc> } } ,
  ItalicFeatures     = { SmallCapsFont={ <it sc> } } ,
  BoldItalicFeatures = { SmallCapsFont={ <bf it sc> } } ,
]
Roman 123 \\\textsc{Small caps 456}
```

For most modern fonts that have small caps as a font feature, this level of control isn't generally necessary, but you may still occasionally find font families in which the small caps are in a separate font.

All of the bold, italic, and small caps fonts can be loaded with different font features from the main font. See [Section 6.5](#) for details. When an OpenType font is selected for `SmallCapsFont`, the small caps font feature is *not* automatically enabled. In this case, users should write instead, if necessary,

```
\fontspec{...}[
  SmallCapsFont={...},
  SmallCapsFeatures={Letters=SmallCaps},
]
```

## 5.2 Specifically choosing the NFSS family

In  $\text{\LaTeX}$ 's NFSS, font families are defined with names such as 'ppl' (Palatino), 'cmr' (Computer Modern Roman), and so on, which are selected with the `\fontfamily` command :

```
\fontfamily{ppl}\selectfont
```

In `fontspec`, the family names are auto-generated based on the `fontname` of the font; for example, writing `\fontspec{Times New Roman}` for the first time would generate an internal font family name of 'TimesNewRoman(1)'.

In certain cases it is desirable to be able to choose this internal font family name so it can be re-used elsewhere for interacting with other packages that use the  $\text{\LaTeX}$ 's font selection interface; an example might be

```
\usepackage{fancyvrb}
\fvset{fontfamily=myverbatimfont}
```

To select a font for use in this way in `fontspec` use the `NFSSFamily` feature :<sup>1</sup>

```
\newfontfamily\verbatimfont[NFSSFamily=myverbatimfont]{Inconsolata}
```

It is then possible to write commands such as :

```
\fontfamily{myverbatimfont}\selectfont
```

---

1. Thanks to Luca Fascione for the example and motivation for finally implementing this feature.

which is essentially the same as writing `\verbatimfont`, or to go back to the original example :

```
\fvset{fontfamily=myverbatimfont}
```

Only use this feature when necessary; the in-built font switching commands that fontspec generates (such as `\verbatimfont` in the example above) are recommended in all other cases.

If you don't wish to explicitly set the NFSS family but you would like to know what it is, an alternative mechanism for package writers is introduced as part of the fontspec programming interface; see the function `\fontspec_set_family:Nnn` for details (Section 16 on page 45).

### 5.3 Choosing additional NFSS font faces

LaTeX's font selection scheme is more flexible than the fontspec interface discussed up until this point. It assigns to each font face a *family* (discussed above), a *series* such as bold or light or condensed, and a *shape* such as italic or slanted or small caps. The fontspec features such as `BoldFont` and so on all assign faces for the default series and shapes of the NFSS, but it's not uncommon to have font families that have multiple weights and shapes and so on.

If you set up a regular font family with the 'standard four' (upright, bold, italic, and bold italic) shapes and then want to use, say, a light font for a certain document element, many users will be perfectly happy to use `\newfontface\<switch>` and use the resulting font `\<switch>`. In other cases, however, it is more convenient or even necessary to load additional fonts using additional NFSS specifiers.

```
FontFace = {<series>}{<shape>}{ Font = <font name> , <features> }
FontFace = {<series>}{<shape>}{<font name>}
```

The font thus specified will inherit the font features of the main font, with optional addition *<features>* as requested. (Note that the optional `{<features>}` argument is still surrounded with curly braces.) Multiple `FontFace` commands may be used in a single declaration to specify multiple fonts. As an example :

```
\setmainfont{font1.otf}[
  FontFace = {c}{n}{ font2.otf } ,
  FontFace = {c}{m}{ Font = font3.otf , Color = red }
]
```

Writing `\fontseries{c}\selectfont` will result in font2 being selected, which then followed by `\fontshape{m}\selectfont` will result in font3 being selected (in red). A font face that is defined in terms of a different series but a normal shape will attempt to find a matching small caps feature and define that face as well if appropriate. Conversely, a font faced defined in terms of a different font will not.

There are some standards for choosing shape and series codes; the LaTeX<sub>2<sub>ε</sub></sub> font selection guide<sup>2</sup> lists series m for medium, b for bold, bx for bold extended, sb for semi-bold, and c for condensed. A far more comprehensive listing is included in Appendix A of Philipp Lehman's 'The Font Installation Guide'<sup>3</sup> covering 14 separate weights and 12 separate widths.

The `FontFace` command also interacts properly with the `SizeFeatures` command as follows : (nonsense set of font selection choices)

- 
2. `texdoc fntguide`
  3. `texdoc fontinstallationguide`

```

FontFace = {c}{n}{
  Font = Times ,
  SizeFeatures = {
    { Size = -10 , Font=Georgia } ,
    { Size = 10-15} , % default "Font = Times"
    { Size = 15- , Font=Cochin } ,
  },
},

```

Note that if the first Font feature is omitted then each size needs its own inner Font declaration.

## 5.4 Math(s) fonts

When `\setmainfont`, `\setsansfont` and `\setmonofont` are used in the preamble, they also define the fonts to be used in maths mode inside the `\mathrm`-type commands. This only occurs in the preamble because  $\TeX$  freezes the maths fonts after this stage of the processing. The `fontspec` package must also be loaded after any maths font packages (e.g., `euler`) to be successful. (Actually, it is *only* `euler` that is the problem.<sup>4</sup>)

Note that `fontspec` will not change the font for general mathematics; only the upright and bold shapes will be affected. To change the font used for the mathematical symbols, see either the `mathspec` package or the `unicode-math` package.

Note that you may find that loading some maths packages won't be as smooth as you expect since `fontspec` (and  $\XTeX$  in general) breaks many of the assumptions of  $\TeX$  as to where maths characters and accents can be found. Contact me if you have troubles, but I can't guarantee to be able to fix any incompatibilities. The `Lucida` and `Euler` maths fonts should be fine; for all others keep an eye out for problems.

```

\setmathrm{<font name>}[<font features>]
\setmathsf{<font name>}[<font features>]
\setmathtt{<font name>}[<font features>]
\setboldmathrm{<font name>}[<font features>]

```

However, the default text fonts may not necessarily be the ones you wish to use when typesetting maths (especially with the use of fancy ligatures and so on). For this reason, you may optionally use the commands above (in the same way as our other `\fontspec`-like commands) to explicitly state which fonts to use inside such commands as `\mathrm`. Additionally, the `\setboldmathrm` command allows you define the font used for `\mathrm` when in bold maths mode (which is activated with, among others, `\boldmath`).

For example, if you were using `Optima` with the `Euler` maths font, you might have this in your preamble :

```

\usepackage{mathpazo}
\usepackage{fontspec,xunicode}
\setmainfont{Optima}
\setmathrm{Optima}
\setboldmathrm[BoldFont={Optima ExtraBlack}]{Optima Bold}

```

## 5.5 Miscellaneous font selecting details

**The optional argument — from v2.4** For the first decade of `fontspec`'s life, optional font features were selected with a bracketed argument before the font name, as in :

---

4. Speaking of `euler`, if you want to use its `[mathbf]` option, it won't work, and you'll need to put this after `fontspec` is loaded instead : `\AtBeginDocument{\DeclareMathAlphabet\mathbf{U}{eur}{b}{n}}`

```
\setmainfont[
  lots and lots ,
  and more and more ,
  an excessive number really ,
  of font features could go here
]{myfont.otf}
```

This always looked like ugly syntax to me, and the order of these arguments has now been reversed :

```
\setmainfont{myfont.otf}[
  lots and lots ,
  and more and more ,
  an excessive number really ,
  of font features could go here
]
```

I hope this doesn't cause any problems.

1. Backwards compatibility has been preserved. (In fact, you could even write

```
\fontspec[Ligatures=Rare]{myfont.otf}[Color=red]
```

if you really felt like it and both sets of features would be applied.)

2. Following standard xparse behaviour, there must be no space before the opening bracket; writing

```
\fontspec{myfont.otf}_[Color=red]
```

will result in `[Color=red]` not being recognised an argument and therefore it will be typeset as text. When breaking over lines, write either of :

```
\fontspec{myfont.otf}%
[Color=red]
```

```
\fontspec{myfont.otf}[
Color=Red]
```

**Spaces** `\fontspec` and `\addfontfeatures` ignore trailing spaces as if it were a 'naked' control sequence; e.g., 'M. `\fontspec{...}` N' and 'M. `\fontspec{...}`N' are the same.

**Italic small caps** Note that this package redefines the `\itshape` and `\scshape` commands in order to allow them to select italic small caps in conjunction.

**Emphasis and nested emphasis** You may specify the behaviour of the `\emph` command by setting the `\emshape` command. E.g., for bold emphasis :

```
\renewcommand\emshape{\bfseries}
```

Nested emphasis is controlled by the `\eminnershape` command. For example, for `\emph{\emph{...}}` to produce small caps :

```
\renewcommand\eminnershape{\scshape}
```

This functionality is provided with the same interface as the `fixltx2e` package, with a slightly different internal implementation.

## 6 Selecting font features

The commands discussed so far such as `\fontspec` each take an optional argument for accessing the font features of the requested font. Commands are provided to set default features to be applied for all fonts, and even to change the features that a font is presently

---

Example 5 : A demonstration of the `\defaultfontfeatures` command.

---

	<code>\fontspec{TeX Gyre Adventor}</code>
	Some default text 0123456789 \
	<code>\defaultfontfeatures{</code>
	Numbers=OldStyle, Color=888888
	<code>}</code>
Some default text 0123456789	<code>\fontspec{TeX Gyre Adventor}</code>
Now grey, with old-style figures: 0123456789	Now grey, with old-style figures: 0123456789

---

loaded with. Different font shapes can be loaded with separate features, and different features can even be selected for different sizes that the font appears in. This section discusses these options.

## 6.1 Default settings

```
\defaultfontfeatures{<font features>}
```

It is sometimes useful to define font features that are applied to every subsequent font selection command. This may be defined with the `\defaultfontfeatures` command, shown in Example 5. New calls of `\defaultfontfeatures` overwrite previous ones, and defaults can be reset by calling the command with an empty argument.

```
\defaultfontfeatures[<font name>]{<font features>}
```

Default font features can be specified on a per-font and per-face basis by using the optional argument to `\defaultfontfeatures` as shown.<sup>5</sup>

```
\defaultfontfeatures[TeX Gyre Adventor]{Color=blue}
\setmainfont{TeX Gyre Adventor}% will be blue
```

Multiple fonts may be affected by using a comma separated list of font names.

```
\defaultfontfeatures[<\font-switch>]{<font features>}
```

**New in v2.4.** Defaults can also be applied to symbolic families such as those created with the `\newfontfamily` command and for `\rmfamily`, `\sffamily`, and `\ttfamily`:

```
\defaultfontfeatures[\rmfamily,\sffamily]{Ligatures=TeX}
\setmainfont{TeX Gyre Adventor}% will use standard TeX ligatures
```

The line above to set T<sub>E</sub>X-like ligatures is now activated by *default* in `fontspec.cfg`. To reset default font features, simply call the command with an empty argument:

```
\defaultfontfeatures[\rmfamily,\sffamily]{}
\setmainfont{TeX Gyre Adventor}% will no longer use standard TeX ligatures
```

```
\defaultfontfeatures+{<font features>}
\defaultfontfeatures+[<font name>]{<font features>}
```

**New in v2.4.** Using the `+` form of the command appends the *<font features>* to any already-selected defaults.

---

5. Internally, *<font name>* has all spaces removed and is converted to lowercase.

## 6.2 Default settings from a file

In addition to the defaults that may be specified in the document as described above, when a font is first loaded, a configuration file is searched for with the name '*fontname*'.fontspec'.<sup>6</sup>

The contents of this file can be used to specify default font features without having to have this information present within each document. *fontname* is stripped of spaces and file extensions are omitted; for example, the line above for TeX Gyre Adventor could be placed in a file called TeXGyreAdventor.fontspec, or for specifying options for texgyreadventor-regular.otf (when loading by filename), the configuration file would be texgyreadventor-regular.fontspec. (N.B. the lettercase of the names should match.)

This mechanism can be used to define custom names or aliases for your font collections. If you create a file MyCharis.fontspec containing, say,

```
\defaultfontfeatures[My Charis]
{
  Extension = .ttf ,
  UprightFont = CharisSILR,
  BoldFont = CharisSILB,
  ItalicFont = CharisSILI,
  BoldItalicFont = CharisSILBI,
  % <any other desired options>
}
```

you can load that custom family with `\fontspec{My Charis}` and similar. The optional argument to `\defaultfontfeatures` must match that requested by the font loading command (`\fontspec`, etc.), else the options won't take effect.

Finally, note that options for font faces can also be defined in this way. To continue the example above, here we colour the different faces :

```
\defaultfontfeatures[CharisSILR]{Color=blue}
\defaultfontfeatures[CharisSILB]{Color=red}
```

And such configuration lines can be stored either inline inside `My Charis.fontspec` or within their own `.fontspec` files; in this way, fontspec is designed to handle 'nested' configuration options as well.

## 6.3 Changing the currently selected features

`\addfontfeatures{font features}`

This command allows font features to be changed without knowing what features are currently selected or even what font is being used. A good example of this could be to add a hook to all tabular material to use monospaced numbers, as shown in Example 6. Note however that the behaviour in this regard will be unreliable (subject to the font itself) if you attempt to *change* an already selected feature. *E.g.*, this sort of thing can cause troubles :

```
\addfontfeature{Numbers=OldStyle}...
\addfontfeature{Numbers=Lining}...
123
```

With both features active, how will the font render '123'? Depends on the font. In the distant future this functionality will be re-written to avoid this issue (giving 'Numbers=OldStyle' the smarts to know to explicitly de-activate any previous instances of 'Numbers=Lining', and vice-versa, but as I hope you can imagine this requires a fair degree of elbow grease which I haven't had available for some time now.

---

6. Located in the current folder or within a standard `texmf` location.

---

Example 6 : A demonstration of the `\addfontfeatures` command. Note the caveat listed in the text regarding such usage.

---

<p>'In 1842, 999 people sailed 97 miles in 13 boats. In 1923, 111 people sailed 54 miles in 56 boats.'</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Year</th> <th>People</th> <th>Miles</th> <th>Boats</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1842</td> <td>999</td> <td>75</td> <td>13</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1923</td> <td>111</td> <td>54</td> <td>56</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Year	People	Miles	Boats	1842	999	75	13	1923	111	54	56	<pre> \fontspec{TeX Gyre Adventor}% [Numbers={Proportional,OldStyle}] `In 1842, 999 people sailed 97 miles in 13 boats. In 1923, 111 people sailed 54 miles in 56 boats.' \bigskip  {\addfontfeatures{Numbers={Monospaced,Lining}} \begin{tabular}{@{} cccc @{}} Year &amp; People &amp; Miles &amp; Boats \\ \hline 1842 &amp; 999 &amp; 75 &amp; 13 \\ 1923 &amp; 111 &amp; 54 &amp; 56 \end{tabular} </pre>
Year	People	Miles	Boats										
1842	999	75	13										
1923	111	54	56										

---

`\addfontfeature` This command may also be executed under the alias `\addfontfeature`.

## 6.4 Priority of feature selection

Features defined with `\addfontfeatures` override features specified by `\fontspec`, which in turn override features specified by `\defaultfontfeatures`. If in doubt, whenever a new font is chosen for the first time, an entry is made in the transcript (.log) file displaying the font name and the features requested.

## 6.5 Different features for different font shapes

```

BoldFeatures={\features}
ItalicFeatures={\features}
BoldItalicFeatures={\features}
SlantedFeatures={\features}
BoldSlantedFeatures={\features}
SmallCapsFeatures={\features}

```

It is entirely possible that separate fonts in a family will require separate options; *e.g.*, Hoefler Text Italic contains various swash feature options that are completely unavailable in the upright shapes.

The font features defined at the top level of the optional `\fontspec` argument are applied to *all* shapes of the family. Using `Upright-`, `SmallCaps-`, `Bold-`, `Italic-`, and `BoldItalicFeatures`, separate font features may be defined to their respective shapes *in addition to*, and with precedence over, the 'global' font features. See Example 7.

Note that because most fonts include their small caps glyphs within the main font, features specified with `SmallCapsFeatures` are applied *in addition* to any other shape-specific features as defined above, and hence `SmallCapsFeatures` can be nested within `ItalicFeatures` and friends. Every combination of upright, italic, bold and small caps can thus be assigned individual features, as shown in the somewhat ludicrous Example 8.



---

Example 7 : Features for, say, just italics.

---

<i>ATTENTION ALL MARTINI DRINKERS</i>	<code>\fontspec{Hoefler Text} \itshape \scshape</code>
<i>ATTENTION ALL MARTINI DRINKERS</i>	<code>Attention All Martini Drinkers \\</code>
	<code>\addfontfeature{ItalicFeatures={Alternate = 1}}</code>
	<code>Attention All Martini Drinkers \\</code>

---



---

Example 8 : An example of setting the SmallCapsFeatures separately for each font shape.

---

	<code>\fontspec{TeX Gyre Termes}[</code>
	<code>UprightFeatures={Color = 220022,</code>
	<code>SmallCapsFeatures = {Color=115511}},</code>
	<code>ItalicFeatures={Color = 2244FF,</code>
	<code>SmallCapsFeatures = {Color=112299}},</code>
	<code>BoldFeatures={Color = FF4422,</code>
	<code>SmallCapsFeatures = {Color=992211}},</code>
	<code>BoldItalicFeatures={Color = 888844,</code>
	<code>SmallCapsFeatures = {Color=444422}},</code>
	<code>]</code>
Upright <b>SMALL CAPS</b>	<code>Upright {\scshape Small Caps} \\</code>
<i>Italic ITALIC SMALL CAPS</i>	<code>\itshape Italic {\scshape Italic Small Caps} \\</code>
<b>Bold BOLD SMALL CAPS</b>	<code>\upshape\bfseries Bold {\scshape Bold Small Caps} \\</code>
<b><i>Bold Italic BOLD ITALIC SMALL CAPS</i></b>	<code>\itshape Bold Italic {\scshape Bold Italic Small Caps}</code>

---

Example 9 : An example of specifying different font features for different sizes of font with SizeFeatures.

	<code>\fontspec{TeX Gyre Chorus}[</code>
	<code>SizeFeatures={</code>
	<code>{Size={-8}, Font=TeX Gyre Bonum Italic, Color=AA0000},</code>
<i>Small</i>	<code>{Size={8-14}, Color=00AA00},</code>
<i>Normal size</i>	<code>{Size={14-}, Color=0000AA}} ]</code>
<i>Large</i>	<code>{\scriptsize Small\par} Normal size\par {\Large Large\par}</code>

TABLE 1 – Syntax for specifying the size to apply custom font features.

Input	Font size, $s$
Size = $X-$	$s \geq X$
Size = $-Y$	$s < Y$
Size = $X-Y$	$X \leq s < Y$
Size = $X$	$s = X$

## 6.6 Different features for different font sizes

```
SizeFeatures = {
  ...
  { Size = <size range>, <font features> },
  { Size = <size range>, Font = <font name>, <font features> },
  ...
}
```

The SizeFeature feature is a little more complicated than the previous features discussed. It allows different fonts and different font features to be selected for a given font family as the point size varies.

It takes a comma separated list of braced, comma separated lists of features for each size range. Each sub-list must contain the Size option to declare the size range, and optionally Font to change the font based on size. Other (regular) fontspec features that are added are used on top of the font features that would be used anyway. A demonstration to clarify these details is shown in Example 9. A less trivial example is shown in the context of optical font sizes in Section 7.6 on page 19.

To be precise, the Size sub-feature accepts arguments in the form shown in Table 1. Braces around the size range are optional. For an exact font size (Size= $X$ ) font sizes chosen near that size will ‘snap’. For example, for size definitions at exactly 11pt and 14pt, if a 12pt font is requested *actually* the 11pt font will be selected. This is a remnant of the past when fonts were designed in metal (at obviously rigid sizes) and later when bitmap fonts were similarly designed for fixed sizes.

If additional features are only required for a single size, the other sizes must still be specified. As in :

```
SizeFeatures={
  {Size=-10,Numbers=Uppercase},
  {Size=10-}}
```

Otherwise, the font sizes greater than 10 won’t be defined at all!

---

Example 10 : Selecting colour with transparency. N.B. due to a conflict between fontspec and the preview package, this example currently does not show any transparency!

---



```
\fontsize{48}{48}
\fontspec{TeX Gyre Bonum Bold}
{\addfontfeature{Color=FF000099}W}\kern-0.5ex
{\addfontfeature{Color=0000FF99}S}\kern-0.4ex
{\addfontfeature{Color=DDBB2299}P}\kern-0.4ex
{\addfontfeature{Color=00BB3399}R}
```

---

**Interaction with other features** For `SizeFeatures` to work with `ItalicFeatures`, `BoldFeatures`, etc., and `SmallCapsFeatures`, a strict heirarchy is required :

```
UprightFeatures =
{
  SizeFeatures =
  {
    {
      Size = -10,
      Font = ..., % if necessary
      SmallCapsFeatures = {...},
      ... % other features for this size range
    },
    ... % other size ranges
  }
}
```

Suggestions on simplifying this interface welcome.

## 7 Font independent options

Features introduced in this section may be used with any font.

### 7.1 Colour

`Color` (or `Colour`), also shown in [Section 6.1 on page 12](#) and elsewhere, uses font specifications to set the colour of the text. The colour is defined as a triplet of two-digit Hex RGB values, with optionally another value for the transparency (where `00` is completely transparent and `FF` is opaque.) Transparency is supported by Lua<sup>®</sup>TeX; Xe<sup>®</sup>TeX with the `xdvipdfmx` driver does not support this feature.

If you load the `xcolor` package, you may use any named colour instead of writing the colours in hexadecimal.

```
\usepackage{xcolor}
...
\fontspec[Color=red]{Verdana} ...
\definecolor{Foo}{rgb}{0.3,0.4,0.5}
\fontspec[Color=Foo]{Verdana} ...
```

The `color` package is *not* supported; use `xcolor` instead.

You may specify the transparency with a named colour using the `Opacity` feature which takes an decimal from zero to one corresponding to transparent to opaque respectively :

---

Example 11 : Automatically calculated scale values.

---

	<code>\setmainfont{Georgia}</code>
	<code>\newfontfamily\lc[Scale=MatchLowercase]{Verdana}</code>
The perfect match is hard to find.	<code>The perfect match {\lc is hard to find.}\</code>
LOG OF FONT	<code>\newfontfamily\uc[Scale=MatchUppercase]{Arial}</code>
	<code>L O G O \uc F O N T</code>

---

`\fontspec[Color=red,Opacity=0.7]{Verdana} ...`

It is still possible to specify a colour in six-char hexadecimal form while defining opacity in this way, if you like.

## 7.2 Scale

Scale = *<number>*  
 Scale = MatchLowercase  
 Scale = MatchUppercase

In its explicit form, `Scale` takes a single numeric argument for linearly scaling the font, as demonstrated in Example 1. It is now possible to measure the correct dimensions of the fonts loaded and calculate values to scale them automatically.

As well as a numerical argument, the `Scale` feature also accepts options `MatchLowercase` and `MatchUppercase`, which will scale the font being selected to match the current default roman font to either the height of the lowercase or uppercase letters, respectively; these features are shown in Example 11.

The amount of scaling used in each instance is reported in the `.log` file. Since there is some subjectivity about the exact scaling to be used, these values should be used to fine-tune the results.

Note that when `Scale=MatchLowercase` is used with `\setmainfont`, the new ‘main’ font of the document will be scaled to match the old default. This may be undesirable in some cases, so to achieve ‘natural’ scaling for the main font but automatically scale all other fonts selected, you may write

```
\defaultfontfeatures{ Scale = MatchLowercase }
\defaultfontfeatures[\rmfamily]{ Scale = 1 }
```

One or both of these lines may be placed into a local `fontspec.cfg` file (see [Section 3.2 on page 3](#)) for this behaviour to be effected in your own documents automatically. (Also see [Section 6.1 on page 12](#) for more information on setting font defaults.)

## 7.3 Interword space

While the space between words can be varied on an individual basis with the  $\TeX$  primitive `\spaceskip` command, it is more convenient to specify this information when the font is first defined.

The space in between words in a paragraph will be chosen automatically, and generally will not need to be adjusted. For those times when the precise details are important, the `WordSpace` feature is provided, which takes either a single scaling factor to scale the default value, or a triplet of comma-separated values to scale the nominal value, the stretch, and the shrink of the interword space by, respectively. (`WordSpace={x}` is the same as `WordSpace={x,x,x}`.)

---

Example 12 : Scaling the default interword space. An exaggerated value has been chosen to emphasise the effects here.

---

<p>Some text for our example to take up some space, and to demonstrate the default interword space.</p> <p>Sometextforourexampletotakeupsomespace,andtodemonstrate the default interword space.</p>	<pre> \fontspec{TeX Gyre Termes} Some text for our example to take up some space, and to demonstrate the default interword space. \bigskip \addfontfeature{ WordSpace = 0.3 } Some text for our example to take up some space, and to demonstrate the default interword space. </pre>
---	---

---



---

Example 13 : Scaling the default post-punctuation space.

---

<p>Letters, Words. Sentences.</p> <p>Letters, Words. Sentences.</p> <p>Letters, Words. Sentences.</p>	<pre> \nonfrenchspacing \fontspec{TeX Gyre Schola} Letters, Words. Sentences.      \par \fontspec{TeX Gyre Schola}[PunctuationSpace=2] Letters, Words. Sentences.      \par \fontspec{TeX Gyre Schola}[PunctuationSpace=0] Letters, Words. Sentences. </pre>
---	--

---

## 7.4 Post-punctuation space

If `\frenchspacing` is *not* in effect,  $\TeX$  will allow extra space after some punctuation in its goal of justifying the lines of text. Generally, this is considered old-fashioned, but occasionally in small amounts the effect can be justified, pardon the pun.

The `PunctuationSpace` feature takes a scaling factor by which to adjust the nominal value chosen for the font; this is demonstrated in Example 13. Note that `PunctuationSpace=0` is *not* equivalent to `\frenchspacing`, although the difference will only be apparent when a line of text is under-full.

## 7.5 The hyphenation character

The letter used for hyphenation may be chosen with the `HyphenChar` feature. It takes three types of input, which are chosen according to some simple rules. If the input is the string `None`, then hyphenation is suppressed for this font. If the input is a single character, then this character is used. Finally, if the input is longer than a single character it must be the UTF-8 slot number of the hyphen character you desire.

This package redefines  $\LaTeX$ 's `\-` macro such that it adjusts along with the above changes.

## 7.6 Optical font sizes

Optically scaled fonts thicken out as the font size decreases in order to make the glyph shapes more robust (less prone to losing detail), which improves legibility. Conversely, at

Example 14 : Explicitly choosing the hyphenation character.		
		<pre> \def\text{\fbox{\parbox{1.55cm}{%   EXAMPLE  HYPHENATION% }}\quad\quad\null\par\bigskip}  \fontspec{Linux Libertine O} \addfontfeature{HyphenChar=None} \text \addfontfeature{HyphenChar={+}} \text </pre>
<div>EXAMPLE HYPHENATION</div>		
<div>EXAMPLE HYPHEN+ ATION</div>		

Example 15 : A demonstration of automatic optical size selection.		
	<pre> \fontspec{Latin Modern Roman} Automatic optical size \scalebox{0.4}{\Huge Automatic optical size} </pre>	<pre> \\ </pre>
Automatic optical size		
Automatic optical size		

large optical sizes the serifs and other small details may be more delicately rendered.

OpenType fonts with optical scaling will exist in several discrete sizes, and these will be selected by Xe<sub>La</sub>TeX and Lua<sub>TeX</sub> *automatically* determined by the current font size as in Example 15, in which we’ve scaled down some large text in order to be able to compare the difference for equivalent font sizes.

The `OpticalSize` option may be used to specify a different optical size. With `OpticalSize` set to zero, no optical size font substitution is performed, as shown in Example 16.

The `SizeFeatures` feature (Section 6.6 on page 16) can be used to specify exactly which optical sizes will be used for ranges of font size. For example, something like :

```

\fontspec{Latin Modern Roman}[
  UprightFeatures = { SizeFeatures = {
    {Size=-10,    OpticalSize=8 },
    {Size= 10-14, OpticalSize=10},
    {Size= 14-18, OpticalSize=14},
    {Size= 18-,  OpticalSize=18}}}

```

Example 16 : Optical size substitution is suppressed when set to zero.		
	<pre> \fontspec{Latin Modern Roman 5 Regular}[OpticalSize=0] Latin Modern optical sizes \fontspec{Latin Modern Roman 8 Regular}[OpticalSize=0] Latin Modern optical sizes \fontspec{Latin Modern Roman 12 Regular}[OpticalSize=0] Latin Modern optical sizes \fontspec{Latin Modern Roman 17 Regular}[OpticalSize=0] Latin Modern optical sizes </pre>	
Latin Modern optical sizes		
Latin Modern optical sizes		
Latin Modern optical sizes		
Latin Modern optical sizes		

## Deuxième partie

# OpenType

## 8 Introduction

OpenType fonts (and other ‘smart’ font technologies such as AAT and Graphite) can change the appearance of text in many different ways. These changes are referred to as features. When the user applies a feature — for example, small capitals — to a run of text, the code inside the font makes appropriate adjustments and small capitals appear in place of lowercase letters. However, the use of such features does not affect the underlying text. In our small caps example, the lowercase letters are still stored in the document; only the appearance has been changed by the OpenType feature. This makes it possible to search and copy text without difficulty. If the user selected a different font that does not support small caps, the ‘plain’ lowercase letters would appear instead.

Some OpenType features are required to support particular scripts, and these features are often applied automatically. The scripts used in India, for example, often require that characters be reshaped and reordered after they are typed by the user, in order to display them in the traditional ways that readers expect. Other features can be applied to support a particular language. The Junicode font for medievalists uses by default the Old English shape of the letter thorn, while in modern Icelandic thorn has a more rounded shape. If a user tags some text as being in Icelandic, Junicode will automatically change to the Icelandic shape through an OpenType feature that localizes the shapes of letters.

A very large group of OpenType features is designed to support high quality typography in Latin, Greek, Cyrillic and other standard scripts. Examples of some font features have already been shown in previous sections; the complete set of OpenType font features supported by fontspec is described below in [Section 9](#).

The OpenType specification provides four-letter codes (e.g., smcp for small capitals) for each feature. The four-letter codes are given below along with the fontspec names for various features, for the benefit of people who are already familiar with OpenType. You can ignore the codes if they don’t mean anything to you.

### 8.1 How to select font features

Font features are selected by a series of *<feature>=<option>* selections. Features are (usually) grouped logically; for example, all font features relating to ligatures are accessed by writing `Ligatures={...}` with the appropriate argument(s), which could be `TeX`, `Rare`, etc., as shown below in [Section 9.1](#).

Multiple options may be given to any feature that accepts non-numerical input, although doing so will not always work. Some options will override others in generally obvious ways; `Numbers={OldStyle,Lining}` doesn’t make much sense because the two options are mutually exclusive, and `XYTeX` will simply use the last option that is specified (in this case using `Lining` over `OldStyle`).

If a feature or an option is requested that the font does not have, a warning is given in the console output. As mentioned in [Section 3.3 on page 3](#) these warnings can be suppressed by selecting the `[quiet]` package option.

TABLE 2 – Options for the OpenType font feature ‘Ligatures’.

Feature	Option	Tag
Ligatures =	Required	* rlig
	NoRequired	rlig ( <i>deactivate</i> )
	Common	* liga
	NoCommon	liga ( <i>deactivate</i> )
	Contextual	* clig
	NoContextual	clig ( <i>deactivate</i> )
	Rare/Discretionary	dlig
	Historic	hlig
	TeX	tlig/trep

\* This feature is activated by default.

Example 17 : An example of the Ligatures feature.

strict → strict	<pre> \def\test#1#2{%   #2 \$\to\$ {\addfontfeature{#1} #2}\} \fontspec{Linux Libertine O} \test{Ligatures=Historic}{strict} \test{Ligatures=Rare}{wurtzite} \test{Ligatures=NoCommon}{firefly} </pre>
wurtzite → wurtzite	
firefly → firefly	

## 9 Complete listing of OpenType font features

### 9.1 Ligatures

Ligatures refer to the replacement of two separate characters with a specially drawn glyph for functional or aesthetic reasons. The list of options, of which multiple may be selected at one time, is shown in Table 2. A demonstration with the Linux Libertine fonts<sup>7</sup> is shown in Example 17.

Note the additional features accessed with Ligatures=TeX. These are not actually real OpenType features, but additions provided by luaotfload (i.e., LuaTeX only) to emulate TeX’s behaviour for ASCII input of curly quotes and punctuation. In XeTeX this is achieved with the Mapping feature (see Section 11.1 on page 37) but for consistency Ligatures=TeX will perform the same function as Mapping=TeX-text.

### 9.2 Letters

The Letters feature specifies how the letters in the current font will look. OpenType fonts may contain the following options: Uppercase, SmallCaps, PetiteCaps, UppercaseSmallCaps, UppercasePetiteCaps, and Unicae.

Petite caps are smaller than small caps. SmallCaps and PetiteCaps turn lowercase letters into the smaller caps letters, whereas the Uppercase... options turn the *capital* letters

7. <http://www.linuxlibertine.org/>



TABLE 3 – Options for the OpenType font feature ‘Letters’.

Feature	Option	Tag
Letters =	Uppercase	case
	SmallCaps	smcp
	PetiteCaps	pcap
	UppercaseSmallCaps	c2sc
	UppercasePetiteCaps	c2pc
	Unicase	unic

Example 18 : Small caps from lowercase or uppercase letters.

	<code>\fontspec{TeX Gyre Adventor}[Letters=SmallCaps]</code>
THIS SENTENCE NO VERB	THIS SENTENCE no verb
	<code>\fontspec{TeX Gyre Adventor}[Letters=UppercaseSmallCaps]</code>
THIS SENTENCE NO verb	THIS SENTENCE no verb

into the smaller caps (good, *e.g.*, for applying to already uppercase acronyms like ‘NASA’). This difference is shown in Example 18. ‘Unicase’ is a weird hybrid of upper and lower case letters.

Note that the Uppercase option will (probably) not actually map letters to uppercase.<sup>8</sup> It is designed to select various uppercase forms for glyphs such as accents and dashes, such as shown in Example 19; note the raised position of the hyphen to better match the surrounding letters.

The Kerning feature also contains an Uppercase option, which adds a small amount of spacing in between letters (see Section 9.12 on page 30).

### 9.3 Numbers

The Numbers feature defines how numbers will look in the selected font, accepting options shown in Table 4.

The synonyms Uppercase and Lowercase are equivalent to Lining and OldStyle, respectively. The differences have been shown previously in Section 6.3 on page 14. The Monospaced option is useful for tabular material when digits need to be vertically aligned.

The SlashedZero option replaces the default zero with a slashed version to prevent confusion with an uppercase ‘O’, shown in Example 20.

8. If you want automatic uppercase letters, look to L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X’s `\MakeUppercase` command.

Example 19 : An example of the Uppercase option of the Letters feature.

	<code>\fontspec{Linux Libertine O}</code>
UPPER-CASE example	UPPER-CASE example
	<code>\addfontfeature{Letters=Uppercase}</code>
UPPER-CASE example	UPPER-CASE example

TABLE 4 – Options for the OpenType font feature ‘Numbers’.

Feature	Option	Tag
Numbers =	Uppercase/Lining	lnum
	Lowercase/OldStyle	onum
	Proportional	pnum
	Monospaced	tnum
	SlashedZero	zero
	Arabic	anum

Example 20 : The effect of the SlashedZero option.

	<code>\fontspec[Numbers=Lining]{TeX Gyre Bonum}</code>
	0123456789
0123456789 0123456789	<code>\fontspec[Numbers=SlashedZero]{TeX Gyre Bonum}</code>
	0123456789

The Arabic option (with tag anum) maps regular numerals to their Arabic script or Persian equivalents based on the current Language setting (see [Section 9.18 on page 33](#)), shown in [Example 21](#) using the Persian Modern font, which is included in T<sub>E</sub>X Live and MiK<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub>. This option is based on a Lua<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> feature of the luaotfload package, not an OpenType feature. (Thus, this feature is unavailable in X<sub>Y</sub>L<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X.)

## 9.4 Contextuals

This feature refers to substitutions of glyphs that vary ‘contextually’ by their relative position in a word or string of characters; features such as contextual swashes are accessed via the options shown in [Table 5](#).

Historic forms are accessed in OpenType fonts via the feature Style=Historic; this is generally *not* contextual in OpenType, which is why it is not included in this feature.

## 9.5 Vertical Position

The VerticalPosition feature is used to access things like subscript (Inferior) and superscript (Superior) numbers and letters (and a small amount of punctuation, sometimes). The Ordinal option will only raise characters that are used in some languages directly after a number. The ScientificInferior feature will move glyphs further below the baseline

Example 21 : An example of number remapping to Arabic or Persian. (Lua<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> only.)

	<code>\fontspec{persian-modern-regular.ttf}%</code>
	<code>[Script=Arabic,Numbers=Arabic]</code>
◦ ۱۲۳۴۵۶۷۸۹	<code>{\addfontfeature{Language=Arabic}</code>
	<code>0123456789} \\\</code>
◦ ۱۲۳۴۵۶۷۸۹	<code>{\addfontfeature{Language=Parsi}</code>
	<code>0123456789}</code>

TABLE 5 – Options for the OpenType font feature ‘Contextuals’.

Feature	Option	Tag
Contextuals =	Swash	cswh
	Alternate	calt
	WordInitial	init
	WordFinal	fina
	LineFinal	falt
	Inner	medi

TABLE 6 – Options for the OpenType font feature ‘VerticalPosition’.

Feature	Option	Tag
VerticalPosition =	Superior	sup
	Inferior	sub
	Numerator	numr
	Denominator	dnom
	ScientificInferior	sinf
	Ordinal	ordn

than the Inferior feature. These are shown in Example 22

Numerator and Denominator should only be used for creating arbitrary fractions (see next section).

The `realscripts` package (which is also loaded by `xltxtra` for  $\text{\LaTeX}$ ) redefines the `\textsubscript` and `\textsuperscript` commands to use the above font features automatically, including for use in footnote labels. If this is the only feature of `xltxtra` you wish to use, consider loading `realscripts` on its own instead.

## 9.6 Fractions

For OpenType fonts use a regular text slash to create fractions, but the `Fraction` feature must be explicitly activated. Some (Asian fonts predominantly) also provide for the `Alternate` feature. These are both shown in Example 23.

Example 22 : The VerticalPosition feature.

	<code>\fontspec{LibreCaslonText-Regular.otf}[VerticalPosition=Superior]</code>
Superior: 1234567890	Superior: 1234567890
	<code>\fontspec{LibreCaslonText-Regular.otf}[VerticalPosition=Numerator]</code>
Numerator: 12345	Numerator: 12345
	<code>\fontspec{LibreCaslonText-Regular.otf}[VerticalPosition=Denominator]</code>
Denominator: 12345	Denominator: 12345
	<code>\fontspec{LibreCaslonText-Regular.otf}[VerticalPosition=ScientificInferior]</code>
Scientific Inferior: 12345	Scientific Inferior: 12345

TABLE 7 – Options for the OpenType font feature ‘Fractions’.

Feature	Option	Tag
Fractions	= On	frac
	Alternate	afrc

---

Example 23 : The Fractions feature.

---

$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{5}{6}$	13579/24680	<code>\fontspec{Hiragino Maru Gothic Pro W4}</code>
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{5}{6}$	13579/24680	<code>1/2 \quad 1/4 \quad 5/6 \quad 13579/24680 \\\</code>
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{5}{6}$	13579/24680	<code>\addfontfeature{Fractions=On}</code>
				<code>1/2 \quad 1/4 \quad 5/6 \quad 13579/24680 \\\</code>
				<code>\addfontfeature{Fractions=Alternate}</code>
				<code>1/2 \quad 1/4 \quad 5/6 \quad 13579/24680 \\\</code>

---

## 9.7 Stylistic Set variations

This feature selects a ‘Stylistic Set’ variation, which usually corresponds to an alternate glyph style for a range of characters (usually an alphabet or subset thereof). This feature is specified numerically. These correspond to OpenType features `ss01`, `ss02`, etc.

Two demonstrations from the Junicode font<sup>9</sup> are shown in Example 24 and Example 25; thanks to Adam Buchbinder for the suggestion.

Multiple stylistic sets may be selected simultaneously by writing, e.g., `StylisticSet={1,2,3}`.

The `StylisticSet` feature is a synonym of the `Variant` feature for `AA` fonts. See Section 13 on page 43 for a way to assign names to stylistic sets, which should be done on a per-font basis.

## 9.8 Character Variants

Similar to the ‘Stylistic Sets’ above, ‘Character Variations’ are selected numerically to adjust the output of (usually) a single character for the particular font. These correspond to the OpenType features `cv01` to `cv99`.

For each character that can be varied, it is possible to select among possible options for that particular glyph. For example, in Example 26 a variety of glyphs for the character ‘v’ are selected, in which 5 corresponds to the character ‘v’ for this font feature, and the trailing `:<n>` corresponds to which variety to choose. Georg Duffner’s open source Garamond

---

9. <http://junicode.sf.net>

---

Example 24 : Insular letterforms, as used in medieval Northern Europe, for the Junicode font accessed with the `StylisticSet` feature.

---

Insular forms.	<code>\fontspec{Junicode}</code>
Injulan pppmj.	<code>Insular forms. \\\</code>
	<code>\addfontfeature{StylisticSet=2}</code>
	<code>Insular forms. \\\</code>

---

---

Example 25 : Enlarged minuscules (capital letters remain unchanged) for the Junicode font, accessed with the StylisticSet feature.

---

ENLARGED Minuscules.	<code>\fontspec{Junicode}</code>
ENLARGED Minuscules.	<code>ENLARGED Minuscules. \</code>
	<code>\addfontfeature{StylisticSet=6}</code>
	<code>ENLARGED Minuscules. \</code>

---



---

Example 26 : The CharacterVariant feature showing off Georg Duffner's open source Garamond revival font.

---

<i>very</i>	
<i>very</i>	
<i>very</i>	
<i>very</i>	<code>\fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic} very \</code>
<i>very</i>	<code>\fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant=5] very \</code>
<i>very</i>	<code>\fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant=5:0] very \</code>
<i>very</i>	<code>\fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant=5:1] very \</code>
<i>very</i>	<code>\fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant=5:2] very \</code>
<i>very</i>	<code>\fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant=5:3] very \</code>

---

revival font<sup>10</sup> is used in this example. Character variants are specifically designed not to conflict with each other, so you can enable them individually per character as shown in Example 27. (Unlike stylistic alternates, say.)

Note that the indexing starts from zero.

## 9.9 Alternates

The Alternate feature (for the raw OpenType feature salt) is used to access alternate font glyphs when variations exist in the font, such as in Example 28. It uses a nu-

---

10. <http://www.georgduffner.at/ebgaramond/>

---

Example 27 : The CharacterVariant feature selecting multiple variants simultaneously.

---

<i>ℰ violet</i>	
<i>ℰ violet</i>	
<i>ℰ violet</i>	<code>\fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic} \&amp; violet \</code>
<i>ℰ violet</i>	<code>\fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant={4}] \&amp; violet \</code>
<i>ℰ violet</i>	<code>\fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant={5:2}] \&amp; violet \</code>
<i>ℰ violet</i>	<code>\fontspec{EB Garamond 12 Italic}[CharacterVariant={4,5:2}] \&amp; violet \</code>

---

Example 28 : The Alternate feature.	
A & h	<code>\fontspec{Linux Libertine 0}</code>
A & h	<code>\textsc{a} \&amp; h \\\</code>
A & h	<code>\addfontfeature{Alternate=0}</code>
	<code>\textsc{a} \&amp; h</code>

TABLE 8 – Options for the OpenType font feature ‘Style’.

Feature Option	Tag
Style = Alternate	salt
Italic	ital
Ruby	ruby
Swash	swsh
Historic	hist
TitlingCaps	titl
HorizontalKana	hkna
VerticalKana	vkna

merical selection, starting from zero, that will be different for each font. Note that the `Style=Alternate` option is equivalent to `Alternate=0` to access the default case.

Note that the indexing starts from zero.

See [Section 13 on page 43](#) for a way to assign names to alternates, which must be done on a per-font basis.

## 9.10 Style

‘Ruby’ refers to a small optical size, used in Japanese typography for annotations. For fonts with multiple `salt` OpenType features, use the `fontspec` `Alternate` feature instead.

Example 29 and Example 30 both contain glyph substitutions with similar characteristics. Note the occasional inconsistency with which font features are labelled; a long-tailed ‘Q’ could turn up anywhere!

In other features, larger breadths of changes can be seen, covering the style of an entire alphabet. See Example 31 and Example 32; in the latter, the `Italic` option affects the Latin text and the `Ruby` option the Japanese.

Note the difference here between the default and the horizontal style kana in Example 33: the horizontal style is slightly wider.

Example 29 : Example of the Alternate option of the Style feature.	
M Q W	<code>\fontspec{Quattrocento Roman}</code>
M Q W	<code>M Q W \\\</code>
M Q W	<code>\addfontfeature{Style=Alternate}</code>
	<code>M Q W</code>

---

Example 30 : Example of the Historic option of the Style feature.

---

MQZ  
MQZ

```
\fontspec{Adobe Jenson Pro}
M Q Z
\addfontfeature{Style=Historic}
M Q Z
```

---



---

Example 31 : Example of the TitlingCaps option of the Style feature.

---

TITLING CAPS  
TITLING CAPS

```
\fontspec{Adobe Garamond Pro}
TITLING CAPS
\addfontfeature{Style=TitlingCaps}
TITLING CAPS
```

---



---

Example 32 : Example of the Italic and Ruby options of the Style feature.

---

Latin ようこそ ワカヨタレソ  
*Latin* ようこそ ワカヨタレソ

```
\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}
Latin \kana
\addfontfeature{Style={Italic, Ruby}}
Latin \kana
```

---



---

Example 33 : Example of the HorizontalKana and VerticalKana options of the Style feature.

---

ようこそ ワカヨタレソ  
ようこそ ワカヨタレソ  
ようこそ ワカヨタレソ

```
\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}
\kana
{\addfontfeature{Style=HorizontalKana}
\kana }
{\addfontfeature{Style=VerticalKana}
\kana }
```

---

TABLE 9 – Options for the OpenType font feature ‘Diacritics’.

Feature	Option	Tag
Diacritics =	MarkToBase	* mark
	NoMarkToBase	mark <i>(deactivate)</i>
	MarkToMark	* mkmk
	NoMarkToMark	mkmk <i>(deactivate)</i>
	AboveBase	* abvm
	NoAboveBase	abvm <i>(deactivate)</i>
	BelowBase	* blwm
	NoBelowBase	blwm <i>(deactivate)</i>

\* This feature is activated by default.

TABLE 10 – Options for the OpenType font feature ‘Kerning’.

Feature	Option	Tag
Kerning =	Uppercase	csp
	On	* kern
	Off	kern <i>(deactivate)</i>

\* This feature is activated by default.

## 9.11 Diacritics

Specifies how combining diacritics should be placed. These will usually be controlled automatically according to the Script setting.

## 9.12 Kerning

Specifies how inter-glyph spacing should behave. Well-made fonts include information for how differing amounts of space should be inserted between separate character pairs. This kerning space is inserted automatically but in rare circumstances you may wish to turn it off.

As briefly mentioned previously at the end of [Section 9.2 on page 22](#), the Uppercase option will add a small amount of tracking between uppercase letters, seen in [Exemple 34](#), which uses the Romande fonts<sup>11</sup> (thanks to Clea F. Rees for the suggestion). The Uppercase option acts separately to the regular kerning controlled by the On/Off options.

11. <http://arkandis.tuxfamily.org/adffonts.html>

Example 34 : Adding extra kerning for uppercase letters. (The difference is usually very small.)

UPPERCASE EXAMPLE  
UPPERCASE EXAMPLE

```
\fontspec{Romande ADF Std Bold}
UPPERCASE EXAMPLE \\
\addfontfeature{Kerning=Uppercase}
UPPERCASE EXAMPLE
```



Example 35 : Artificial font transformations.		
		<code>\fontspec{Charis SIL} \emph{ABCxyz} \quad</code> <code>\fontspec{Charis SIL}[FakeSlant=0.2] ABCxyz</code>
		<code>\fontspec{Charis SIL} ABCxyz \quad</code> <code>\fontspec{Charis SIL}[FakeStretch=1.2] ABCxyz</code>
<i>ABCxyz</i>	<i>ABCxyz</i>	
ABCxyz	ABCxyz	<code>\fontspec{Charis SIL} \textbf{ABCxyz} \quad</code>
<b>ABCxyz</b>	<b>ABCxyz</b>	<code>\fontspec{Charis SIL}[FakeBold=1.5] ABCxyz</code>

Example 36 : Annotation forms for OpenType fonts.		
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9		
(1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (9)		
① ② ③ ④ ⑤ ⑥ ⑦ ⑧ ⑨		
⓪ ① ② ③ ④ ⑤ ⑥ ⑦ ⑧ ⑨		
Ⓘ ② ③ ④ ⑤ ⑥ ⑦ ⑧ ⑨		
⓪ ② ③ ④ ⑤ ⑥ ⑦ ⑧ ⑨		
⓪ ② ③ ④ ⑤ ⑥ ⑦ ⑧ ⑨		
⓪ ② ③ ④ ⑤ ⑥ ⑦ ⑧ ⑨		
1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9.		
	<code>\fontspec{Hiragino Maru Gothic Pro}</code>	
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	
	<code>\def\x#1{\{\{\addfontfeature{Annotation=#1}</code>	
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 \}}	
	<code>\x0\x1\x2\x3\x4\x5\x6\x7\x8\x9</code>	

### 9.13 Font transformations

In rare situations users may want to mechanically distort the shapes of the glyphs in the current font such as shown in Exemple 35. Please don't overuse these features; they are *not* a good alternative to having the real shapes.

If values are omitted, their defaults are as shown above.

If you want the bold shape to be faked automatically, or the italic shape to be slanted automatically, use the `AutoFakeBold` and `AutoFakeSlant` features. For example, the following two invocations are equivalent :

```
\fontspec[AutoFakeBold=1.5]{Charis SIL}
\fontspec[BoldFeatures={FakeBold=1.5}]{Charis SIL}
```

If both of the `AutoFake...` features are used, then the bold italic font will also be faked.

The `FakeBold` and `AutoFakeBold` features are only available with the  $\text{\XeTeX}$  engine and will be ignored in  $\text{\LuaTeX}$ .

### 9.14 Annotation

Some fonts are equipped with an extensive range of numbers and numerals in different forms. These are accessed with the Annotation feature (OpenType feature `nal`), selected numerically as shown in Exemple 36.

Note that the indexing starts from zero.

TABLE 11 – Options for the OpenType font feature ‘CJKShape’.

Feature	Option	Tag
CJKShape =	Traditional	trad
	Simplified	smp1
	JIS1978	jp78
	JIS1983	jp83
	JIS1990	jp90
	Expert	expt
	NLC	nlck

Example 37 : Different standards for CJK ideograph presentation.

啞嚙軀 妍并訝	<code>\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}</code>
	<code>{\addfontfeature{CJKShape=Traditional}}</code>
啞嚙軀 妍并訝	<code>\text }</code> <code>\\</code>
	<code>{\addfontfeature{CJKShape=NLC}}</code>
啞嚙軀 妍并訝	<code>\text }</code> <code>\\</code>
	<code>{\addfontfeature{CJKShape=Expert}}</code>
啞嚙軀 妍并訝	<code>\text }</code>

## 9.15 CJK shape

There have been many standards for how CJK ideographic glyphs are ‘supposed’ to look. Some fonts will contain many alternate glyphs available in order to be able to display these glyphs correctly in whichever form is appropriate. Both `AA` and OpenType fonts support the following CJKShape options: Traditional, Simplified, JIS1978, JIS1983, JIS1990, and Expert. OpenType also supports the NLC option.

## 9.16 Character width

Many Asian fonts are equipped with variously spaced characters for shoe-horning into their generally monospaced text. These are accessed through the CharacterWidth feature.

Japanese alphabetic glyphs (in Hiragana or Katakana) may be typeset proportionally, to better fit horizontal measures, or monospaced, to fit into the rigid grid imposed by ideo-

TABLE 12 – Options for the OpenType font feature ‘CharacterWidth’.

Feature	Option	Tag
CharacterWidth =	Proportional	pwid
	Full	fwid
	Half	hwid
	Third	twid
	Quarter	qwid
	AlternateProportional	palt
	AlternateHalf	halt

---

Example 38 : Proportional or fixed width forms.

---

			<code>\def\test{\makebox[2cm][l]{\texta}%</code>
			<code>\makebox[2.5cm][l]{\textb}%</code>
			<code>\makebox[2.5cm][l]{abcdef}}</code>
			<code>\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}</code>
ようこそ	ワカヨタレソ	abcdef	<code>{\addfontfeature{CharacterWidth=Proportional}\test}\</code>
ようこそ	ワカヨタレソ	a b c d e f	<code>{\addfontfeature{CharacterWidth=Full}\test}\</code>
ようこそ	ワカヨタレソ	abcdef	<code>{\addfontfeature{CharacterWidth=Half}\test}</code>

---



---

Example 39 : Numbers can be compressed significantly.

---

	<code>\fontspec[Renderer=AAT]{Hiragino Mincho Pro}</code>
	<code>{\addfontfeature{CharacterWidth=Full}}</code>
	<code>---12321---}\</code>
	<code>{\addfontfeature{CharacterWidth=Half}}</code>
	<code>---1234554321---}\</code>
— 1 2 3 2 1 —	<code>{\addfontfeature{CharacterWidth=Third}}</code>
-1234554321-	<code>---123456787654321---}\</code>
-123456787654321-	<code>{\addfontfeature{CharacterWidth=Quarter}}</code>
-12345678900987654321-	<code>---12345678900987654321---</code>

---

graphic typesetting. In this latter case, there are also half-width forms for squeezing more kana glyphs (which are less complex than the kanji they are amongst) into a given block of space. The same features are given to roman letters in Japanese fonts, for typesetting foreign words in the same style as the surrounding text.

The same situation occurs with numbers, which are provided in increasingly illegible compressed forms seen in Example 39.

## 9.17 Vertical typesetting

TODO!

## 9.18 OpenType scripts and languages

Fonts that include glyphs for various scripts and languages may contain different font features for the different character sets and languages they support, and different font features may behave differently depending on the script or language chosen. When multilingual fonts are used, it is important to select which language they are being used for, and more importantly what script is being used.

The ‘script’ refers to the alphabet in use; for example, both English and French use the Latin script. Similarly, the Arabic script can be used to write in both the Arabic and Persian languages.

The Script and Language features are used to designate this information. The possible options are tabulated in [Table 13 on the next page](#) and [Table 14 on page 35](#), respectively. When a script or language is requested that is not supported by the current font, a warning is printed in the console output.

---

Example 40 : An example of various Scripts and Languages.

---

العربي	الْعَرَبِيّ	
हिन्दी	हिन्दी	
লেখ	লেখ	
મર્યાદા-સૂચક નિવેદન	મર્યાદા-સૂચક નિવેદન	<code>\testfeature{Script=Arabic}{\arabictext}</code>
നമുടെ പാരമ്പര്യം	നമുടെ പാരമ്പര്യം	<code>\testfeature{Script=Devanagari}{\devanagaritext}</code>
আদি সচু নুগাদি সচু	आदि सचु नुगदि सचु	<code>\testfeature{Script=Bengali}{\bengalitext}</code>
தமிழ் துடீ	தமிழ் துடீ	<code>\testfeature{Script=Gujarati}{\gujaratitext}</code>
ᐃᐃᐃᐃ. ᐃᐃᐃᐃ		<code>\testfeature{Script=Malayalam}{\malayalamtext}</code>
cáp số mõi	cáp số mõi	<code>\testfeature{Script=Gurmukhi}{\gurmukhitext}</code>
		<code>\testfeature{Script=Tamil}{\tamiltext}</code>
		<code>\testfeature{Script=Hebrew}{\hebrewtext}</code>
		<code>\def\examplefont{Doulos SIL}</code>
		<code>\testfeature{Language=Vietnamese}{\vietnamesetext}</code>

---

Because these font features can change which features are able to be selected for the font, they are automatically selected by fontspec before all others and, if Xe<sub>La</sub>TeX is being used, will specifically select the OpenType renderer for this font, as described in [Section 11.3 on page 38](#).

### 9.18.1 Script and Language examples

In the examples shown in Example 40, the Code2000 font<sup>12</sup> is used to typeset various input texts with and without the OpenType Script applied for various alphabets. The text is only rendered correctly in the second case; many examples of incorrect diacritic spacing as well as a lack of contextual ligatures and rearrangement can be seen. Thanks to Jonathan Kew, Yves Codet and Gildas Hamel for their contributions towards these examples.

### 9.18.2 Defining new scripts and languages

While the scripts and languages listed in [Table 13](#) and [Table 14](#) are intended to be comprehensive, there may be some missing; alternatively, you might wish to use different names to access scripts/languages that are already listed. Adding scripts and languages can be performed with the `\newfontscript` and `\newfontlanguage` commands. For example,

```
\newfontscript{Arabic}{arab}
\newfontlanguage{Zulu}{ZUL}
```

The first argument is the fontspec name, the second the OpenType tag. The advantage to using these commands rather than `\newfontfeature` (see [Section 13 on page 43](#)) is the error-checking that is performed when the script or language is requested.

---

12. <http://www.code2000.net/>

## Troisième partie

# LuaT<sub>EX</sub>-only font features

## 10 OpenType font feature files

An OpenType font feature file is a plain text file describing OpenType layout feature of a font in a human-readable format. The syntax of OpenType feature files is defined by Adobe<sup>13</sup>.

Feature files can be used to add or customize OpenType features of a font on the fly without editing the font file itself.

Adding a new OpenType feature is as creating a plain text file defining the new feature and then loading it by passing its name or path to `FeatureFile`, then OpenType features defined in the file can be activated as usual.

For example, when adding one of the default features like `kern` or `liga`, no special activation is needed. On the other hand, an optional feature like `onum` or `smcp` will be activated when old style numbers or small capitals are activated, respectively. However, OpenType feature in the feature file can have any and that can be used to selectively activate the feature; for example defining a ligature feature called `mlig` and then activating it using `RawFeature` option without activating other ligatures in the font.

Figure 1 shows an example feature file. The first two lines set the script and language under which the defined features will be available, which the default language in both default and Latin scripts, respectively.

Then it defines a `liga` feature, which is a glyph substitution feature. The names starting with backslash are glyph names that is to be substituted and while the leading backslash is optional, it is used to escape glyph names when they interfere with preserved keywords. It should also be noted that glyph names are font specific and the same glyph can be named differently in different fonts.

13. <http://www.adobe.com/devnet/opentype/afdko/topic.feature.file.syntax.html>

TABLE 13 – Defined Scripts for OpenType fonts. Aliased names are shown in adjacent positions marked with red pilcrows (¶).

Arabic	Ethiopic	Limbu	Sumero-Akkadian	Cunei-
Armenian	Georgian	Linear B	form	
Balinese	Glagolitic	Malayalam	Syloti Nagri	
Bengali	Gothic	¶Math	Syriac	
Bopomofo	Greek	¶Maths	Tagalog	
Braille	Gujarati	Mongolian	Tagbanwa	
Buginese	Gurmukhi	Musical Symbols	Tai Le	
Buhid	Hangul Jamo	Myanmar	Tai Lu	
Byzantine Music	Hangul	N'ko	Tamil	
Canadian Syllabics	Hanunoo	Ogham	Telugu	
Cherokee	Hebrew	Old Italic	Thaana	
¶CJK	¶Hiragana and Katakana	Old Persian Cuneiform	Thai	
¶CJK Ideographic	¶Kana	Oriya	Tibetan	
Coptic	Javanese	Osmanya	Tifinagh	
Cypriot Syllabary	Kannada	Phags-pa	Ugaritic Cuneiform	
Cyrillic	Kharosthi	Phoenician	Yi	
Default	Khmer	Runic		
Deseret	Lao	Shavian		
Devanagari	Latin	Sinhala		

TABLE 14 – Defined Languages for OpenType fonts. Aliased names are shown in adjacent positions marked with red pilcrows (⌵).

Abaza	Default	Igbo	Koryak	Norway House Cree	Saraiki
Abkhazian	Dogri	Ijo	Ladin	Nisi	Serer
Adyghe	Divehi	Ilokano	Lahuli	Niuean	South Slavey
Afrikaans	Djerma	Indonesian	Lak	Nkole	Southern Sami
Afar	Dangme	Ingush	Lambani	N'ko	Suri
Agaw	Dinka	Inuktitut	Lao	Dutch	Svan
Altai	Dungan	Irish	Latin	Nogai	Swedish
Amharic	Dzongkha	Irish Traditional	Laz	Norwegian	Swadaya Aramaic
Arabic	Ebira	Icelandic	L-Cree	Northern Sami	Swahili
Aari	Eastern Cree	Inari Sami	Ladakhi	Northern Tai	Swazi
Arakanese	Edo	Italian	Lezgi	Esperanto	Sutu
Assamese	Efik	Hebrew	Lingala	Nynorsk	Syriac
Athapaskan	Greek	Javanese	Low Mari	Oji-Cree	Tabasaran
Avar	English	Yiddish	Limbu	Ojibway	Tajiki
Awadhi	Erzya	Japanese	Lomwe	Oriya	Tamil
Aymara	Spanish	Judezmo	Lower Sorbian	Oromo	Tatar
Azeri	Estonian	Jula	Lule Sami	Ossetian	TH-Cree
Badaga	Basque	Kabardian	Lithuanian	Palestinian	Telugu
Baghelkhandi	Evenki	Kachchi	Luba	Aramaic	Tongan
Balkar	Even	Kalenjin	Luganda	Pali	Tigre
Baule	Ewe	Kannada	Luhya	Punjabi	Tigrinya
Berber	French Antillean	Karachay	Luo	Palpa	Thai
Bench	⌵Farsi	Georgian	Latvian	Pashto	Tahitian
Bible Cree	⌵Parsi	Kazakh	Majang	Polytonic Greek	Tibetan
Belarussian	⌵Persian	Kevena	Makua	Pilipino	Turkmen
Bemba	Finnish	Khutsuri Georgian	Malayalam	Palaung	Temne
Bengali	Fijian	Khakass	Traditional	Polish	Tswana
Bulgarian	Flemish	Khanty-Kazim	Mansi	Provençal	Tundra Nenets
Bhili	Forest Nenets	Khmer	Marathi	Portuguese	Tonga
Bhojpuri	Fon	Khanty-Shurishkar	Marwari	Chin	Todo
Bikol	Faroese	Khanty-Vakhi	Mbundu	Rajasthani	Turkish
Bilen	French	Khowar	Manchu	R-Cree	Tsonga
Blackfoot	Frisian	Kikuyu	Moose Cree	Russian Buriat	Turoyo Aramaic
Balochi	Friulian	Kirghiz	Mende	Riang	Tulu
Balante	Futa	Kisii	Me'en	Rhaeto-Romanic	Tuvin
Balti	Fulani	Kokni	Mizo	Romanian	Twi
Bambara	Ga	Kalmyk	Macedonian	Romany	Udmurt
Bamileke	Gaelic	Kamba	Male	Rusyn	Ukrainian
Breton	Gagauz	Kumaoni	Malagasy	Ruanda	Urdu
Brahui	Galician	Komo	Malinke	Russian	Upper Sorbian
Braj Bhasha	Garshuni	Komso	Malayalam	Sadri	Uyghur
Burmese	Garhwali	Kanuri	Reformed	Sanskrit	Uzbek
Bashkir	Ge'ez	Kodagu	Malay	Santali	Venda
Beti	Gilyak	Korean Old Hangul	Mandinka	Sayisi	Vietnamese
Catalan	Gumuz	Konkani	Mongolian	Sekota	Wa
Cebuano	Gondi	Kikongo	Manipuri	Selkup	Wagdi
Chechen	Greenlandic	Komi-Permyak	Maninka	Sango	West-Cree
Chaha Gurage	Garó	Korean	Manx Gaelic	Shan	Welsh
Chattisgarhi	Guarani	Komi-Zyrian	Moksha	Sibe	Wolof
Chichewa	Gujarati	Kpelle	Moldavian	Sidamo	Tai Lue
Chukchi	Haitian	Krio	Mon	Silte Gurage	Xhosa
Chipewyan	Halam	Karakalpak	Moroccan	Skolt Sami	Yakut
Cherokee	Harauti	Karelian	Maori	Slovak	Yoruba
Chuvash	Hausa	Karaim	Maithili	Slavey	Y-Cree
Comorian	Hawaiian	Karen	Maltese	Slovenian	Yi Classic
Coptic	Hammer-Banna	Koorete	Mundari	Somali	Yi Modern
Cree	Hiligaynon	Kashmiri	Naga-Assamese	Samoan	Chinese Hong Kong
Carrier	Hindi	Khasi	Nanai	Sena	Chinese Phonetic
Crimean Tatar	High Mari	Kildin Sami	Naskapi	Sindhi	Chinese Simplified
Church Slavonic	Hindko	Kui	N-Cree	Sinhalese	Chinese Traditional
Czech	Ho	Kulvi	Ndebele	Soninke	Zande
Danish	Harari	Kumyk	Ndonga	Sodo Gurage	Zulu
Dargwa	Croatian	Kurdish	Nepali	Sotho	
Woods Cree	Hungarian	Kurukh	Newari	Albanian	
German	Armenian	Kuy	Nagari	Serbian	

FIGURE 1 – An example font feature file.

---

```

languagesystem DFLT dflt;
languagesystem latn dflt;

# Ligatures
feature liga {
  sub \f \i by \fi;
  sub \f \l by \fl;
} liga;

# Kerning
feature kern {
  pos \A \Y -200;
  pos \a \y -80;
} kern;

```

---

Example 41 : X<sub>Y</sub>TeX’s Mapping feature.

---

“¡A small amount of—text!”	<code>\fontspec{Cochin}[Mapping=tex-text]</code> <code>^^!`A small amount of---text!''</code>
----------------------------	--

---

Glyph positioning features like kerning can be defined in a similar way, but instead of the keyword `sub(stitute)` the keyword `pos(ition)` is used instead. Figure 1 shows an example of adding kerning between `AY` and `ay`<sup>14</sup>.

Lines starting with `#` are comments and will be ignored.

An OpenType feature file can have any number of features and can have a mix of substitution and positioning features, please refer to the full feature file specification for further documentation.

## Quatrième partie

# Fonts and features with X<sub>Y</sub>TeX

## 11 X<sub>Y</sub>TeX-only font features

The features described here are available for any font selected by `fontspec`.

### 11.1 Mapping

Mapping enables a X<sub>Y</sub>TeX text-mapping scheme, shown in Exemple 41.

Using the `tex-text` mapping is also equivalent to writing `Ligatures=TeX`. The use of the latter syntax is recommended for better compatibility with Lua<sub>Y</sub>TeX documents.

---

14. The kerning is expressed in font design units which are fractions of em depending on the *units per em* value of the font, usually 1000 for PostScript fonts and 2048 for TrueType fonts.

---

Example 42 : The LetterSpace feature.

---

	<code>\fontspec{Didot}</code>
	<code>\addfontfeature{LetterSpace=0.0}</code>
USE TRACKING FOR DISPLAY CAPS TEXT	<code>USE TRACKING FOR DISPLAY CAPS TEXT \</code>
	<code>\addfontfeature{LetterSpace=2.0}</code>
USE TRACKING FOR DISPLAY CAPS TEXT	<code>USE TRACKING FOR DISPLAY CAPS TEXT</code>

---

## 11.2 Letter spacing

Letter spacing, or tracking, is the term given to adding (or subtracting) a small amount of horizontal space in between adjacent characters. It is specified with the `LetterSpace`, which takes a numeric argument, shown in Example 42.

The letter spacing parameter is a normalised additive factor (not a scaling factor); it is defined as a percentage of the font size. That is, for a 10 pt font, a letter spacing parameter of ‘1.0’ will add 0.1 pt between each letter.

This functionality *should not be used for lowercase text*, which is spacing correctly to begin with, but it can be very useful, in small amounts, when setting small caps or all caps titles. Also see the OpenType Uppercase option of the Letters feature (Section 9.2 on page 22).

## 11.3 Different font technologies : AAT and OpenType

X<sub>Y</sub>TeX supports two rendering technologies for typesetting, selected with the `Renderer` font feature. The first, AAT, is that provided (only) by Mac OS X itself. The second, OpenType, is an open source OpenType interpreter.<sup>15</sup> It provides greater support for OpenType features, notably contextual arrangement, over AAT.

In general, this feature will not need to be explicitly called : for OpenType fonts, the OpenType renderer is used automatically, and for AAT fonts, AAT is chosen by default. Some fonts, however, will contain font tables for *both* rendering technologies, such as the Hiragino Japanese fonts distributed with Mac OS X, and in these cases the choice may be required.

Among some other font features only available through a specific renderer, OpenType provides for the `Script` and `Language` features, which allow different font behaviour for different alphabets and languages; see Section 9.18 on page 33 for the description of these features. *Because these font features can change which features are able to be selected for the font instance, they are selected by fontspec before all others and will automatically and without warning select the OpenType renderer.*

## 11.4 Optical font sizes

Multiple Master fonts are parameterised over orthogonal font axes, allowing continuous selection along such features as weight, width, and optical size (see ?? on page ?? for further details). Whereas an OpenType font will have only a few separate optical sizes, a Multiple Master font’s optical size can be specified over a continuous range. Unfortunately, this flexibility makes it harder to create an automatic interface through L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, and the optical size for a Multiple Master font must always be specified explicitly.

```
\fontspec{Minion MM Roman}[OpticalSize=11]
MM optical size test
```

---

15. v2.4 : This was called ‘ICU’ in previous versions of X<sub>Y</sub>TeX and fontspec. Backwards compatibility is preserved.



```

\fontspec{Minion MM Roman}[OpticalSize=47]
MM optical size test
\fontspec{Minion MM Roman}[OpticalSize=71]
MM optical size test

```

## 12 Mac OS X’s AAT fonts

*Warning! X<sub>Y</sub>TeX’s implementation on Mac OS X is currently in a state of flux and the information contained below may well be wrong from 2013 onwards. There is a good chance that the features described in this section will not be available any more as X<sub>Y</sub>TeX’s completes its transition to a cross-platform-only application.*

Mac OS X’s font technology began life before the ubiquitous-OpenType era and revolved around the Apple-invented ‘AAT’ font format. This format had some advantages (and other disadvantages) but it never became widely popular in the font world.

Nonetheless, this is the font format that was first supported by X<sub>Y</sub>TeX (due to its pedigree on Mac OS X in the first place) and was the first font format supported by fontspec. A number of fonts distributed with Mac OS X are still in the AAT format, such as ‘Skia’.

### 12.1 Ligatures

Ligatures refer to the replacement of two separate characters with a specially drawn glyph for functional or aesthetic reasons. For AAT fonts, you may choose from any combination of Required, Common, Rare (or Discretionary), Logos, Rebus, Diphthong, Squared, AbbrevSquared, and Icelandic.

Some other Apple AAT fonts have those ‘Rare’ ligatures contained in the Icelandic feature. Notice also that the old TeX trick of splitting up a ligature with an empty brace pair does not work in X<sub>Y</sub>TeX; you must use a 0 pt kern or \hbox (e.g., \null) to split the characters up if you do not want a ligature to be performed (the usual examples for when this might be desired are words like ‘shelffull’).

### 12.2 Letters

The Letters feature specifies how the letters in the current font will look. For AAT fonts, you may choose from Normal, Uppercase, Lowercase, SmallCaps, and InitialCaps.

### 12.3 Numbers

The Numbers feature defines how numbers will look in the selected font. For AAT fonts, they may be a combination of Lining or OldStyle and Proportional or Monospaced (the latter is good for tabular material). The synonyms Uppercase and Lowercase are equivalent to Lining and OldStyle, respectively. The differences have been shown previously in [Section 6.3 on page 14](#).

### 12.4 Contextuals

This feature refers to glyph substitution that vary by their position; things like contextual swashes are implemented here. The options for AAT fonts are WordInitial, WordFinal (Example 43), LineInitial, LineFinal, and Inner (Example 44, also called ‘non-final’ sometimes). As non-exclusive selectors, like the ligatures, you can turn them off by prefixing their name with No.

---

Example 43 : Contextual glyph for the beginnings and ends of words.

---

<p>[Contextuals=WordInitial,WordFinal] <i>where is all the veg-</i> <i>emite</i></p>	<pre>\newfontface\fancy{Hoefler Text Italic} [Contextuals={WordInitial,WordFinal}] \fancy where is all the vegemite</pre>
--	---

---



---

Example 44 : A contextual feature for the ‘long s’ can be convenient as the character does not need to be marked up explicitly.

---

<p>‘Inner’ fwashes can <i>sometimes</i> contain the archaic long s.</p>	<pre>\fontspec{Hoefler Text}[Contextuals=Inner] ‘Inner’ swashes can \emph{sometimes} \\ contain the archaic long~s.</pre>
---	---

---

## 12.5 Vertical position

The `VerticalPosition` feature is used to access things like subscript (`Inferior`) and superscript (`Superior`) numbers and letters (and a small amount of punctuation, `sometimes`). The `Ordinal` option is (supposed to be) contextually sensitive to only raise characters that appear directly after a number. These are shown in Example 45.

The `realscripts` package (also loaded by `xltxtra`) redefines the `\textsubscript` and `\textsuperscript` commands to use the above font features, including for use in footnote labels.

## 12.6 Fractions

Many fonts come with the capability to typeset various forms of fractional material. This is accessed in `fontspec` with the `Fractions` feature, which may be turned On or Off in both AAT and OpenType fonts.

In AAT fonts, the ‘fraction slash’ or solidus character, is to be used to create fractions. When `Fractions` are turned On, then only pre-drawn fractions will be used. See Example 46.

Using the `Diagonal` option (AAT only), the font will attempt to create the fraction from superscript and subscript characters.

Some (Asian fonts predominantly) also provide for the `Alternate` feature shown in Example 47.

---

Example 45 : Vertical position for AAT fonts.

---

<p>Normal <sup>superior</sup> <sub>inferior</sub> 1<sup>st</sup> 2<sup>nd</sup> 3<sup>rd</sup> 4<sup>th</sup> 0<sup>th</sup> 8<sup>abcde</sup></p>	<pre>\fontspec{Skia} Normal \fontspec{Skia}[VerticalPosition=Superior] Superior \fontspec{Skia}[VerticalPosition=Inferior] Inferior \\ \fontspec{Skia}[VerticalPosition=Ordinal] 1st 2nd 3rd 4th 0th 8abcde</pre>
--	---

---

---

Example 46 : Fractions in AAT fonts. The  $\frac{1}{2}$  glyph is the ‘fraction slash’ that may be typed in Mac OS X with `OPT+SHIFT+1`; not shown literally here due to font constraints.

---

	<code>\fontspec[Fractions=On]{Skia}</code>
	<code>1{\frac{1}{2}} \quad 5{\frac{5}{6}} \quad \% \text{ fraction slash}</code>
$\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{5}{6}$	<code>1/2 \quad 5/6 \quad \% \text{ regular slash}</code>
$\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{5}{6}$	<code>\fontspec[Fractions=Diagonal]{Skia}</code>
$\frac{13579}{24680}$	<code>13579{\frac{13579}{24680}} \quad \% \text{ fraction slash}</code>
$\frac{13579}{24680}$	<code>\quad 13579/24680 \quad \% \text{ regular slash}</code>

---



---

Example 47 : Alternate design of pre-composed fractions.

---

	<code>\fontspec{Hiragino Maru Gothic Pro}</code>
	<code>1/2 \quad 1/4 \quad 5/6 \quad 13579/24680 \quad \%</code>
$\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{4}$ $\frac{5}{6}$ $\frac{13579}{24680}$	<code>\addfontfeature{Fractions=Alternate}</code>
$\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{4}$ $\frac{5}{6}$ $\frac{13579}{24680}$	<code>1/2 \quad 1/4 \quad 5/6 \quad 13579/24680</code>

---

## 12.7 Variants

The Variant feature takes a single numerical input for choosing different alphabetic shapes. Don’t mind my fancy Example 48 :) I’m just looping through the nine (!) variants of Zapfino.

See Section 13 on page 43 for a way to assign names to variants, which should be done on a per-font basis.

## 12.8 Alternates

Selection of Alternates *again* must be done numerically; see Example 49. See Section 13 on page 43 for a way to assign names to alternates, which should be done on a per-font basis.

---

Example 48 : Nine variants of Zapfino.

---



```
\newcounter{var}
\whiledo{\value{var}<9}{%
  \edef\1{%
    \noexpand\fontspec[Variant=\thevar,
      Color=0099\thevar\thevar]{Zapfino}}\1%
  \makebox[0.75\width]{d}%
  \stepcounter{var}}
\hspace*{2cm}
```

---

---

Example 49 : Alternate shape selection must be numerical.

---

<i>Sphinx Of Black Quartz, JUDGE Mr Vow</i>	<code>\fontspec{Hoefler Text Italic}[Alternate=0]</code> <code>Sphinx Of Black Quartz, {\scshape Judge My Vow} \</code>
<i>Sphinx Of Black Quartz, JUDGE Mr Vow</i>	<code>\fontspec{Hoefler Text Italic}[Alternate=1]</code> <code>Sphinx Of Black Quartz, {\scshape Judge My Vow}</code>

---



---

Example 50 : Vertical typesetting.

---

共產主義者は

共 産 主 義 者	<code>\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}</code> <code>\verttext</code>
	<code>\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}[Renderer=AAT,Vertical=RotatedGlyphs]</code> <code>\rotatebox{-90}{\verttext}% requires the graphicx package</code>

---

## 12.9 Style

The options of the Style feature are defined in AAT as one of the following : Display, Engraved, IlluminatedCaps, Italic, Ruby,<sup>16</sup> TallCaps, or TitlingCaps.

Typical examples for these features are shown in [Section 9.10](#).

### 12.10 CJK shape

There have been many standards for how CJK ideographic glyphs are ‘supposed’ to look. Some fonts will contain many alternate glyphs in order to be able to display these glyphs correctly in whichever form is appropriate. Both AAT and OpenType fonts support the following CJKShape options : Traditional, Simplified, JIS1978, JIS1983, JIS1990, and Expert. OpenType also supports the NLC option.

### 12.11 Character width

See [Section 9.16 on page 32](#) for relevant examples; the features are the same between OpenType and AAT fonts. AAT also allows CharacterWidth=Default to return to the original font settings.

### 12.12 Vertical typesetting

TODO : improve!

X<sub>Y</sub>TeX provides for vertical typesetting simply with the ability to rotate the individual glyphs as a font is used for typesetting, as shown in [Exemple 50](#).

No actual provision is made for typesetting top-to-bottom languages; for an example of how to do this, see the vertical Chinese example provided in the X<sub>Y</sub>TeX documentation.

---

16. ‘Ruby’ refers to a small optical size, used in Japanese typography for annotations.

---

Example 51 : Assigning new AAT features.

---

<i>This is XeTeX by Jonathan Kew.</i>	<pre>\newAATfeature{Alternate}{HoeflerSwash}{17}{1} \fontspec{Hoefler Text Italic}[Alternate=HoeflerSwash] This is XeTeX by Jonathan Kew.</pre>
---------------------------------------	---

---

### 12.13 Diacritics

Diacritics are marks, such as the acute accent or the tilde, applied to letters; they usually indicate a change in pronunciation. In Arabic scripts, diacritics are used to indicate vowels. You may either choose to Show, Hide or Decompose them in AAT fonts. The Hide option is for scripts such as Arabic which may be displayed either with or without vowel markings. E.g.,

```
\fontspec[Diacritics=Hide]{...}
```

Some older fonts distributed with Mac OS X included ‘O/’ *etc.* as shorthand for writing ‘Ø’ under the label of the Diacritics feature. If you come across such fonts, you’ll want to turn this feature off (imagine typing hello/goodbye and getting ‘helløgoodbye’ instead!) by decomposing the two characters in the diacritic into the ones you actually want. I recommend using the proper L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X input conventions for obtaining such characters instead.

### 12.14 Annotation

Various Asian fonts are equipped with a more extensive range of numbers and numerals in different forms. These are accessed through the Annotation feature with the following options : Off, Box, RoundedBox, Circle, BlackCircle, Parenthesis, Period, RomanNumerals, Diamond, BlackSquare, BlackRoundSquare, and DoubleCircle.

## Cinquième partie

# Programming interface

This is the beginning of some work to provide some hooks that use fontspec for various macro programming purposes.

## 13 Defining new features

This package cannot hope to contain every possible font feature. Three commands are provided for selecting font features that are not provided for out of the box. If you are using them a lot, chances are I’ve left something out, so please let me know.

`\newAATfeature`      New AAT features may be created with this command :

```
\newAATfeature{<feature>}{<option>}{<feature code>}{<selector code>}
```

Use the X<sub>Y</sub>L<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X file AAT-info.tex to obtain the code numbers. See [Example 51](#).

`\newopentypefeature`      New OpenType features may be created with this command :

```
\newopentypefeature{<feature>}{<option>}{<feature tag>}
```

The synonym `\newICUfeature` is deprecated.

Here’s what it would look like in practise :

```
\newopentypefeature{Style}{NoLocalForms}{-loc1}
```

---

Example 52 : Assigning new arbitrary features.

---

<i>sockdolager rubdown</i>	<code>\newfontfeature{AvoidD}{Special=Avoid d-collisions}</code>
	<code>\newfontfeature{NoAvoidD}{Special=!Avoid d-collisions}</code>
	<code>\fontspec{Zapfino}[AvoidD,Variant=1]</code>
<i>sockdolager rubdown</i>	<code>sockdolager rubdown \</code>
	<code>\fontspec{Zapfino}[NoAvoidD,Variant=1]</code>
	<code>sockdolager rubdown</code>

---



---

Example 53 : Using raw font features directly.

---

	<code>\fontspec{texgyrepagella-regular.otf}[RawFeature=+smcp]</code>
PAGELLA SMALL CAPS	Pagella small caps

---

`\newfontfeature` In case the above commands do not accommodate the desired font feature (perhaps a new X<sub>Y</sub>TeX feature that fontspec hasn't been updated to support), a command is provided to pass arbitrary input into the font selection string :

`\newfontfeature{<name>}{<input string>}`

For example, Zapfino contains the feature 'Avoid d-collisions'. To access it with this package, you could do some like that shown in Example 52. (For some reason this feature doesn't appear to be working although fontspec is doing the right thing. To be investigated.)

The advantage to using the `\newAATfeature` and `\newopentypefeature` commands instead of `\newfontfeature` is that they check if the selected font actually contains the desired font feature at load time. By contrast, `\newfontfeature` will not give a warning for improper input.

## 14 Going behind fontspec's back

Expert users may wish not to use fontspec's feature handling at all, while still taking advantage of its L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X font selection conveniences. The `RawFeature` font feature allows literal X<sub>Y</sub>TeX font feature selection when you happen to have the OpenType feature tag memorised.

Multiple features can either be included in a single declaration :

`[RawFeature=+smcp;+onum]`

or with multiple declarations :

`[RawFeature=+smcp, RawFeature=+onum]`

## 15 Renaming existing features & options

`\aliasfontfeature` If you don't like the name of a particular font feature, it may be aliased to another with the `\aliasfontfeature{<existing name>}{<new name>}` command, such as shown in Example 54.

Spaces in feature (and option names, see below) *are* allowed. (You may have noticed this already in the lists of OpenType scripts and languages).

`\aliasfontfeatureoption` If you wish to change the name of a font feature option, it can be aliased to another

Example 54 : Renaming font features.	
Roman Letters <i>And Swash</i>	<pre>\aliasfontfeature{ItalicFeatures}{IF} \fontspec{Hoefler Text}[IF = {Alternate=1}] Roman Letters \itshape And Swash</pre>

Example 55 : Renaming font feature options.	
Scientific Inferior: 12345	<pre>\aliasfontfeature{VerticalPosition}{Vert Pos} \aliasfontfeatureoption{VerticalPosition}{ScientificInferior}{Sci Inf} \fontspec{LinLibertine_R.otf}[Vert Pos=Sci Inf] Scientific Inferior: 12345</pre>

with the command `\aliasfontfeatureoption{<font feature>}{<existing name>}{<new name>}`, such as shown in Example 55.

This example demonstrates an important point : when aliasing the feature options, the *original* feature name must be used when declaring to which feature the option belongs.

Only feature options that exist as sets of fixed strings may be altered in this way. That is, Proportional can be aliased to Prop in the Letters feature, but 550099BB cannot be substituted for Purple in a Color specification. For this type of thing, the `\newfontfeature` command should be used to declare a new, *e.g.*, PurpleColor feature :

```
\newfontfeature{PurpleColor}{color=550099BB}
```

Except that this example was written before support for named colours was implemented. But you get the idea.

## 16 Programming details

In some cases, it is useful to know what the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  font family of a specific fontspec font is. After a `\fontspec`-like command, this is stored inside the `\l_fontspec_family_tl` macro. Otherwise,  $\text{\LaTeX}$ 's own `\f@family` macro can be useful here, too. The raw  $\text{\TeX}$  font that is defined is stored temporarily in `\l_fontspec_font`.

The following commands in `expl3` syntax may be used for writing code that interfaces with fontspec-loaded fonts. All of the following conditionals also exist with T and F as well as TF suffixes.

<code>\fontspec_if_fontspec_font</code>	:TF	Test whether the currently selected font has been loaded by fontspec.
<code>\fontspec_if_aat_feature</code>	:nnTF	Test whether the currently selected font contains the AAT feature (#1,#2).
<code>\fontspec_if_opentype</code>	:TF	Test whether the currently selected font is an OpenType font. Always true for $\text{\LuaTeX}$ fonts.
<code>\fontspec_if_feature</code>	:nTF	Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType feature #1. E.g. : <code>\fontspec_if_feature:nTF {pnum} {True} {False}</code> . Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
<code>\fontspec_if_feature</code>	:nnnTF	Test whether the currently selected font with raw OpenType script tag #1 and raw OpenType language tag #2 contains the raw OpenType feature tag #3. E.g. : <code>\fontspec_if_feature:nTF {latn} {ROM} {pnu}</code> . Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

<code>\fontspec_if_script :nTF</code>	Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType script #1. E.g. : <code>\fontspec_if_script:nTF {latn} {True} {False}</code> . Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
<code>\fontspec_if_language :nTF</code>	Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType language tag #1. E.g. : <code>\fontspec_if_language:nTF {ROM} {True} {False}</code> . Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
<code>\fontspec_if_language :nnTF</code>	Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType language tag #2 in script #1. E.g. : <code>\fontspec_if_language:nnTF {cyr1} {SRB} {True} {False}</code> . Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
<code>\fontspec_if_current_script :nTF</code>	Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType script tag #1.
<code>\fontspec_if_current_language :nTF</code>	Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType language tag #1.
<code>\fontspec_set_family :Nnn</code>	<p>#1 : <math>\text{\LaTeX}</math> family  #2 : fontspec features  #3 : font name</p> <p>Defines a new NFSS family from given <i>⟨features⟩</i> and <i>⟨font⟩</i>, and stores the family name in the variable <i>⟨family⟩</i>. This font family can then be selected with standard <math>\text{\LaTeX}</math> commands <code>\fontfamily{⟨family⟩}\selectfont</code>. See the standard fontspec user commands for applications of this function.</p>
<code>\fontspec_set_fontface :NNnn</code>	<p>#1 : primitive font  #2 : <math>\text{\LaTeX}</math> family  #3 : fontspec features  #4 : font name</p> <p>Variant of the above in which the primitive <math>\text{\TeX}</math> font command is stored in the variable <i>⟨primitive font⟩</i>. If a family is loaded (with bold and italic shapes) the primitive font command will only select the regular face. This feature is designed for <math>\text{\LaTeX}</math> programmers who need to perform subsequent font-related tests on the <i>⟨primitive font⟩</i>.</p>

## Sixième partie

# The patching/improvement of $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ and other packages

Derived originally from `xltextra`, this package contains patches to various  $\text{\LaTeX}$  components and third-party packages to improve the default behaviour.

## 17 Inner emphasis

`fixltx2e`'s method for checking for “inner” emphasis is a little fragile in  $\text{X}_{\text{\LaTeX}}$ , because font slant information might be missing from the font. Therefore, we use  $\text{\LaTeX}$ 's NFSS information, which is more likely to be correct.



## 18 Unicode footnote symbols

By default  $\LaTeX$  defines symbolic footnote characters in terms of commands that don't resolve well; better results can be achieved by using specific Unicode characters or proper LICRs with the `xunicode` package.

This problem is solved by defining `\@fnsymbol` in a similar manner to the `fixltx2e` package.

## 19 Verbatim

Many verbatim mechanisms assume the existence of a 'visible space' character that exists in the ASCII space slot of the typewriter font. This character is known in Unicode as U+2423 : BOX OPEN, which looks like this : '␣'.

When a Unicode typewriter font is used,  $\LaTeX$  no longer prints visible spaces for the `verbatim*` environment and `\verb*` command. This problem is fixed by using the correct Unicode glyph, and the following packages are patched to do the same : `listings`, `fancyvrb`, `moreverb`, and `verbatim`.

In the case that the typewriter font does not contain '␣', the Latin Modern Mono font is used as a fallback.

## 20 Discretionary hyphenation : \-

$\LaTeX$  defines the macro `\-` to insert discretionary hyphenation points. However, it is hard-coded in  $\LaTeX$  to use the hyphen - character. Since `fontspec` makes it easy to change the hyphenation character on a per font basis, it would be nice if `\-` adjusted automatically — and now it does.

## 21 Commands for old-style and lining numbers

`\oldstylenums`       $\LaTeX$ 's definition of `\oldstylenums` relies on strange font encodings. We provide a `fontspec`-compatible alternative and while we're at it also throw in the reverse option as well. Use `\oldstylenums{<text>}` to explicitly use old-style (or lowercase) numbers in `<text>`, and the reverse for `\liningnums{<text>}`.

`\liningnums`

## Septième partie

# fontspec.sty and friends

Herein lie the implementation details of this package. Welcome! It was my first.

## 22 ‘Header’ code

We will eventually load the correct version of the code according to which engine we’re running. As we’ll see later, there are some minor differences between what we have to do in Xe<sub>L</sub>TeX and Lua<sub>L</sub>TeX.

The expl3 module is fontspec.

```
1 <@@=fontspec>
2 <*fontspec&!xetex&!luatex>
```

But for now, this is the shared code.

```
3 \RequirePackage{expl3}[2015/06/26]
4 \RequirePackage{xparse}
5 \ExplSyntaxOn
```

Quick fix for luatex-math :

```
6 \cs_if_exist :NF \lua_now_x :n
7 { \cs_set_eq :NN \lua_now_x :n \directlua }
```

Check engine and load specific modules. For LuaTeX, load only luaotfload which loads luatexbase and lualibs too.

```
8 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {cannot-use-pdftex}
9 {
10   The~ fontspec~ package~ requires~ either~ XeTeX~ or~ LuaTeX~ to~ function.
11   \\\
12   You~ must~ change~ your~ typesetting~ engine~ to,~
13   e.g.,~ "xelatex"~ or~ "luatex"\\
14   instead~ of~ plain~ "latex"~ or~ "pdflatex".
15 }
16 \xetex_if_engine :F
17 {
18   \luatex_if_engine :TF
19   {
20     \RequirePackage{luaotfload}[2013/05/20]
21     \directlua{require("fontspec")}
22   }
23   {
24     \msg_fatal :nn {fontspec} {cannot-use-pdftex}
25   }
26 }
```

### 22.1 expl3 tools

### 22.2 Bits and pieces

#### Conditionals

**firsttime** As \keys\_set:nn is run multiple times, some of its information storing only occurs once while we decide if the font family has been defined or not. When the later processing is occurring per-shape this no longer needs to happen; this is indicated by the ‘firsttime’ conditional (initialised true).

```
27\bool_new:N \l_@@_firsttime_bool
28\bool_new:N \l_@@_nobf_bool
29\bool_new:N \l_@@_noit_bool
30\bool_new:N \l_@@_nosc_bool

31\bool_new:N \l_@@_tfm_bool
32\bool_new:N \l_@@_atsui_bool
33\bool_new:N \l_@@_ot_bool
34\bool_new:N \l_@@_mm_bool
35\bool_new:N \l_@@_graphite_bool
```

For dealing with legacy maths

```
36\bool_new:N \g_@@_math_euler_bool
37\bool_new:N \g_@@_math_lucida_bool
38\bool_new:N \g_@@_pkg_euler_loaded_bool
```

For package options :

```
39\bool_new:N \g_@@_cfg_bool
40\bool_new:N \g_@@_math_bool
```

## Counters

```
41\int_new:N \l_fontspec_script_int
42\int_new:N \l_fontspec_language_int
43\int_new:N \l_fontspec_strnum_int
```

## Other variables

```
44\fp_new:N \l_@@_tmpa_fp
45\fp_new:N \l_@@_tmpb_fp
46\dim_new:N \l_@@_tmpa_dim
47\dim_new:N \l_@@_tmpb_dim
48\dim_new:N \l_@@_tmpc_dim

49\tl_set:Nx \c_colon_str { \tl_to_str:N : }
50\cs_set:Npn \use_v:nnnnn #1#2#3#4#5 {#5}
51\cs_set:Npn \use_iv:nnnnn #1#2#3#4#5 {#4}
```

Need these :

```
52\cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_if_eq:nnTF {nv}
53\cs_generate_variant:Nn \int_set:Nn {Nv}
54\cs_generate_variant:Nn \keys_set:nn {nx}
55\cs_generate_variant:Nn \keys_set_known:nnN {nx}
56\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_if_empty:nTF {x}
57\cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_if_empty:nTF {x}
58\cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_put:Nnn {Nxx}
```

\@@\_int\_mult\_truncate :Nn Missing in expl3, IMO.

```
59\cs_new:Nn \@@_int_mult_truncate:Nn
60 {
61   \int_set:Nn #1 { \__dim_eval:w #2 #1 \__dim_eval_end: }
62 }
```

## 22.3 Error/warning/info messages

Shorthands for messages :

```
63 \cs_new :Npn \@@_error :n { \msg_error :nn {fontspec} }
64 \cs_new :Npn \@@_error :nx { \msg_error :nnx {fontspec} }
65 \cs_new :Npn \@@_warning :n { \msg_warning :nn {fontspec} }
66 \cs_new :Npn \@@_warning :nx { \msg_warning :nnx {fontspec} }
67 \cs_new :Npn \@@_warning :nxx { \msg_warning :nxx {fontspec} }
68 \cs_new :Npn \@@_info :n { \msg_info :nn {fontspec} }
69 \cs_new :Npn \@@_info :nx { \msg_info :nnx {fontspec} }
70 \cs_new :Npn \@@_info :nxx { \msg_info :nxx {fontspec} }
71 \cs_new :Npn \@@_trace :n { \msg_trace :nn {fontspec} }
```

Errors :

```
72 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {no-size-info}
73 {
74   Size~ information~ must~ be~ supplied.\\
75   For~ example,~ SizeFeatures={Size={8-12},...}.
76 }
77 \msg_new :nnnn {fontspec} {font-not-found}
78 {
79   The~ font~ "#1"~ cannot~ be~ found.
80 }
81 {
82   A~font~might~not~be~found~for~many~reasons.\\
83   Check~the~spelling,~where~the~font~is~installed~etc.~etc.\\
84   When~in~doubt,~ask~someone~for~help !
85 }
86 \msg_new :nnnn {fontspec} {rename-feature-not-exist}
87 {
88   The~ feature~ #1~ doesn't~ appear~ to~ be~ defined.
89 }
90 {
91   It~ looks~ like~ you're~ trying~ to~ rename~ a~ feature~ that~ doesn't~ exist.
92 }
93 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {no-glyph}
94 {
95   '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'~ does~ not~ contain~ glyph~ #1.
96 }
97 \msg_new :nnnn {fontspec} {euler-too-late}
98 {
99   The~ euler~ package~ must~ be~ loaded~ BEFORE~ fontspec.
100 }
101 {
102   fontspec~ only~ overwrites~ euler's~ attempt~ to~
103   define~ the~ maths~ text~ fonts~ if~ fontspec~ is~
104   loaded~ after~ euler.~ Type~ <return>~ to~ proceed~
105   with~ incorrect~ \string\mathit,~ \string\mathbf,~ etc.
106 }
107 \msg_new :nnnn {fontspec} {no-xcolor}
108 {
109   Cannot~ load~ named~ colours~ without~ the~ xcolor~ package.
```

```

110 }
111 {
112     Sorry, I can't do anything to help. Instead of loading
113     the color package, use xcolor instead. It's better.
114 }
115 \msg_new :nnnn {fontspec} {unknown-color-model}
116 {
117     Error loading colour '#1'; unknown colour model.
118 }
119 {
120     Sorry, I can't do anything to help. Please report this error
121     to my developer with a minimal example that causes the problem.
122 }
Warnings:
123 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {addfontfeatures-ignored}
124 {
125     \string\addfontfeature (s) ignored;
126     it cannot be used with a font that wasn't selected by fontspec.
127 }
128 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {feature-option-overwrite}
129 {
130     Option '#2' of font feature '#1' overwritten.
131 }
132 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {script-not-exist-latn}
133 {
134     Font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl' does not contain script '#1'.\\
135     'Latin' script used instead.
136 }
137 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {script-not-exist}
138 {
139     Font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl' does not contain script '#1'.
140 }
141 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {aat-feature-not-exist}
142 {
143     '\l_keys_key_tl=\l_keys_value_tl' feature not supported
144     for AAT font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'.
145 }
146 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {aat-feature-not-exist-in-font}
147 {
148     AAT feature '\l_keys_key_tl=\l_keys_value_tl' (#1) not available
149     in font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'.
150 }
151 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {icu-feature-not-exist}
152 {
153     '\l_keys_key_tl=\l_keys_value_tl' feature not supported
154     for OpenType font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'
155 }
156 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {icu-feature-not-exist-in-font}
157 {
158     OpenType feature '\l_keys_key_tl=\l_keys_value_tl' (#1) not available
159     for font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'

```

```

160 with~ script~ '\l_@_script_name_tl'~ and~ language~ '\l_@_lang_name_tl'.
161 }
162 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {no-opticals}
163 {
164   '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'~ doesn't~ appear~ to~ have~ an~ Optical~ Size~ axis.
165 }
166 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {language-not-exist}
167 {
168   Language~ '#1'~ not~ available~
169   for~ font~ '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'~
170   with~ script~ '\l_@_script_name_tl'.\\
171   'Default'~ language~ used~ instead.
172 }
173 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {only-xetex-feature}
174 {
175   Ignored~ XeTeX~ only~ feature :~ '#1'.
176 }
177 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {only-luatex-feature}
178 {
179   Ignored~ LuaTeX~ only~ feature :~ '#1'.
180 }
181 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {no-mapping}
182 {
183   Input~ mapping~ not~ (yet?)~ supported~ in~ LuaTeX.
184 }
185 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {no-mapping-ligtx}
186 {
187   Input~ mapping~ not~ (yet?)~ supported~ in~ LuaTeX.\\
188   Use~ "Ligatures=TeX"~ instead~ of~ "Mapping=tex-text".
189 }
190 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {cm-default-obsolete}
191 {
192   The~ "cm-default"~ package~ option~ is~ obsolete.
193 }
194 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {fakebold-only-xetex}
195 {
196   The~ "FakeBold"~ and~ "AutoFakeBold"~ options~ are~ only~ available~ with~ XeLaTeX.\\
197   Option~ ignored.
198 }
Info messages:
199 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {defining-font}
200 {
201   Font~ family~ '\l_fontspec_family_tl'~ created~ for~ font~ '#2'~
202   with~ options~ [\l_@_all_features_clist].\\
203   \\
204   This~ font~ family~ consists~ of~ the~ following~ shapes :
205   \l_fontspec_defined_shapes_tl
206 }
207 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {no-font-shape}
208 {
209   Could~ not~ resolve~ font~ #1~ (it~ probably~ doesn't~ exist).

```

```

210 }
211 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {set-scale}
212 {
213   \l_fontspec_fontname_tl\space scale ~= \l_@@_scale_tl.
214 }
215 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {setup-math}
216 {
217   Adjusting~ the~ maths~ setup~ (use~ [no-math]~ to~ avoid~ this).
218 }
219 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {no-scripts}
220 {
221   Font~ \l_fontspec_fontname_tl\space does~ not~ contain~ any~ OpenType~ ‘Script’~ information.
222 }
223 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {opa-twice}
224 {
225   Opacity~ set~ twice,~ in~ both~ Colour~ and~ Opacity.\
226   Using~ specification~ "Opacity=#1".
227 }
228 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {opa-twice-col}
229 {
230   Opacity~ set~ twice,~ in~ both~ Opacity~ and~ Colour.\
231   Using~ an~ opacity~ specification~ in~ hex~ of~ "#1/FF".
232 }
233 \msg_new :nnn {fontspec} {bad-colour}
234 {
235   Bad~ colour~ declaration~ "#1".~
236   Colour~ must~ be~ one~ of :\\
237   *~ a~ named~ xcolor~ colour\\
238   *~ a~ six-digit~ hex~ colour~ RRGGBB\\
239   *~ an~ eight-digit~ hex~ colour~ RRGGBBTT~ with~ opacity
240 }

```

## 22.4 Option processing

```

241 \DeclareOption{cm-default}
242 { \@@_warning :n {cm-default-obsolete} }
243 \DeclareOption{math}{\bool_set_true :N \g_@@_math_bool}
244 \DeclareOption{no-math}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}
245 \DeclareOption{config}{\bool_set_true :N \g_@@_cfg_bool}
246 \DeclareOption{no-config}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_cfg_bool}
247 \DeclareOption{quiet}
248 {
249   \msg_redirect_module :nnn { fontspec } { warning } { info }
250   \msg_redirect_module :nnn { fontspec } { info } { none }
251 }
252 \DeclareOption{silent}
253 {
254   \msg_redirect_module :nnn { fontspec } { warning } { none }
255   \msg_redirect_module :nnn { fontspec } { info } { none }
256 }
257 \ExecuteOptions{config,math}
258 \ProcessOptions*

```

## 22.5 Packages

New for Lua $\TeX$ , we load a new package called ‘fontspec-patches’ designed to incorporate the hidden but useful parts of the old xltextra package.

```
259 \RequirePackage{fontspec-patches}

260 \luatex_if_engine :T { \RequirePackage{fontspec-luatex} \endinput }
261 \xetex_if_engine :T { \RequirePackage{fontspec-xetex} \endinput }
262 </fontspec&!xetex&!luatex>
```

## 23 The main package code

That was the driver, and now the fun starts.

```
263 < *fontspec & (xetex | luatex)>
264 \ExplSyntaxOn
```

### 23.1 Encodings

Frank Mittelbach has recommended using the ‘EUx’ family of font encodings to experiment with Unicode. Now that Xe $\TeX$  can find fonts in the texmf tree, the Latin Modern OpenType fonts can be used as the defaults. See the euenc collection of files for how this is implemented.

```
265 <xetex>\tl_set :Nn \g_fontspec_encoding_tl {EU1}
266 <luatex>\tl_set :Nn \g_fontspec_encoding_tl {EU2}
267 \tl_set :Nn \rmdefault {lmr}
268 \tl_set :Nn \sfdefault {lms}
269 \tl_set :Nn \ttdefault {lmt}
270 \RequirePackage[\g_fontspec_encoding_tl]{fontenc}
271 \tl_set_eq :NN \UTFencname \g_fontspec_encoding_tl % for xunicode
```

Dealing with a couple of the problems introduced by babel :

```
272 \tl_set_eq :NN \cyrillicencoding \g_fontspec_encoding_tl
273 \tl_set_eq :NN \latinencoding \g_fontspec_encoding_tl
274 \AtBeginDocument
275 {
276   \tl_set_eq :NN \cyrillicencoding \g_fontspec_encoding_tl
277   \tl_set_eq :NN \latinencoding \g_fontspec_encoding_tl
278 }
```

That latin encoding definition is repeated to suppress font warnings. Something to do with \select@language ending up in the .aux file which is read at the beginning of the document.

**xunicode** Now we load xunicode, working around its internal Xe $\TeX$  check when under Lua $\TeX$ .

```
279 <xetex>\RequirePackage{xunicode}
280 < *luatex>
281 \cs_set_eq :NN \fontspec_tmp : \XeTeXpicfile
282 \cs_set :Npn \XeTeXpicfile {}
283 \RequirePackage{xunicode}
284 \cs_set_eq :NN \XeTeXpicfile \fontspec_tmp :
285 </luatex>
```



## 23.2 User commands

This section contains the definitions of the commands detailed in the user documentation. Only the ‘top level’ definitions of the commands are contained herein; they all use or define macros which are defined or used later on in [Section 23.5 on page 67](#).

### 23.2.1 Helper macros for argument mangling

```
286 \cs_new:Nn \@@_pass_args :nnn
287 {
288   \IfNoValueTF {#2}
289   { \@@_post_arg:w {#1} {#3} }
290   { #1 {#2} {#3} }
291 }
292 \NewDocumentCommand \@@_post_arg:w { m m O{} }
293 { #1 {#3} {#2} }
```

### 23.2.2 Font selection

<code>\fontspec</code>	This is the main command of the package that selects fonts with various features. It takes two arguments : the font name and the optional requested features of that font. Then this new font family is selected.  <pre>294 \NewDocumentCommand \fontspec { o m } 295 { \@@_pass_args :nnn \@@_fontspec :nn {#1} {#2} } 296 297 \cs_new:Nn \@@_fontspec :nn 298 { 299   \fontencoding {\g_fontspec_encoding_tl} 300   \fontspec_set_family :Nnn \f@family {#1}{#2} 301   \selectfont 302   \ignorespaces 303 }</pre>
<code>\setmainfont</code> <code>\setsansfont</code> <code>\setmonofont</code>	The following three macros perform equivalent operations setting the default font for a particular family : ‘roman’, sans serif, or typewriter (monospaced). I end them with <code>\normalfont</code> so that if they’re used in the document, the change registers immediately.  <pre>304 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setmainfont { o m } 305 { \@@_pass_args :nnn \@@_setmainfont :nn {#1} {#2} } 306 307 \cs_new:Nn \@@_setmainfont :nn 308 { 309   \fontspec_set_family :Nnn \rmdefault {#1}{#2} 310   \normalfont 311   \ignorespaces 312 } 313 314 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setsansfont { o m } 315 { \@@_pass_args :nnn \@@_setsansfont :nn {#1} {#2} } 316 317 \cs_new:Nn \@@_setsansfont :nn 318 { 319   \fontspec_set_family :Nnn \sfdefault {#1}{#2} 320   \normalfont</pre>

```

321 \ignorespaces
322 }
323
324 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setmonofont { o m }
325 { \@@_pass_args :nnn \@@_setmonofont :nn {#1} {#2} }
326
327 \cs_new :Nn \@@_setmonofont :nn
328 {
329 \fontspec_set_family :Nnn \ttdefault {#1}{#2}
330 \normalfont
331 \ignorespaces
332 }

\setromanfont This is the old name for \setmainfont, retained for backwards compatibility.
333 \cs_set_eq :NN \setromanfont \setmainfont

\setmathrm These commands are analogous to \setmainfont and others, but for selecting the font used
\setmathsf for \mathrm, etc. They can only be used in the preamble of the document. \setboldmathrm
\setboldmathrm is used for specifying which fonts should be used in \boldmath.
\setmathtt
334 \tl_new :N \g_@@_mathrm_tl
335 \tl_new :N \g_@@_bfmathrm_tl
336 \tl_new :N \g_@@_mathsf_tl
337 \tl_new :N \g_@@_mathtt_tl
338 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setmathrm { o m }
339 { \@@_pass_args :nnn \@@_setmathrm :nn {#1} {#2} }
340
341 \cs_new :Nn \@@_setmathrm :nn
342 {
343 \fontspec_set_family :Nnn \g_@@_mathrm_tl {#1} {#2}
344 }
345
346 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setboldmathrm { o m }
347 { \@@_pass_args :nnn \@@_setboldmathrm :nn {#1} {#2} }
348
349 \cs_new :Nn \@@_setboldmathrm :nn
350 {
351 \fontspec_set_family :Nnn \g_@@_bfmathrm_tl {#1} {#2}
352 }
353
354 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setmathsf { o m }
355 { \@@_pass_args :nnn \@@_setmathsf :nn {#1} {#2} }
356
357 \cs_new :Nn \@@_setmathsf :nn
358 {
359 \fontspec_set_family :Nnn \g_@@_mathsf_tl {#1} {#2}
360 }
361
362 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setmathtt { o m }
363 { \@@_pass_args :nnn \@@_setmathtt :nn {#1} {#2} }
364
365 \cs_new :Nn \@@_setmathtt :nn
366 {

```

```

367 \fontspec_set_family :Nnn \g_@@_mathtt_tl {#1} {#2}
368 }
369 \@onlypreamble\setmathrm
370 \@onlypreamble\setboldmathrm
371 \@onlypreamble\setmathsf
372 \@onlypreamble\setmathtt

```

If the commands above are not executed, then `\rmdefault` (*etc.*) will be used.

```

373 \tl_set :Nn \g_@@_mathrm_tl {\rmdefault}
374 \tl_set :Nn \g_@@_mathsf_tl {\sfdefault}
375 \tl_set :Nn \g_@@_mathtt_tl {\ttdefault}

```

`\newfontfamily` This macro takes the arguments of `\fontspec` with a prepended *<instance cmd>*. This command is used when a specific font instance needs to be referred to repetitively (*e.g.*, in a section heading) since continuously calling `\fontspec_select:nn` is inefficient because it must parse the option arguments every time.

`\fontspec_select:nn` defines a font family and saves its name in `\l_fontspec_family_tl`. This family is then used in a typical NFSS `\fontfamily` declaration, saved in the macro name specified.

```

376 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newfontfamily { m o m }
377 { \@@_pass_args :nnn { \@@_newfontfamily :Nnn #1 } {#2} {#3} }
378
379 \cs_new :Nn \@@_newfontfamily :Nnn
380 {
381   \fontspec_set_family :cnn { g_@@_ \cs_to_str :N #1 _family } {#2} {#3}
382   \use :x
383   {
384     \exp_not :N \DeclareRobustCommand \exp_not :N #1
385     {
386       \exp_not :N \fontencoding {\g_fontspec_encoding_tl}
387       \exp_not :N \fontfamily { \use :c {g_@@_ \cs_to_str :N #1 _family} } \exp_not :N \selectfont
388     }
389   }
390 }

```

`\newfontface` uses the fact that if the argument to `BoldFont`, *etc.*, is empty (*i.e.*, `BoldFont={}`), then no bold font is searched for.

```

391 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newfontface { m o m }
392 { \@@_pass_args :nnn { \@@_newfontface :Nnn #1 } {#2} {#3} }
393
394 \cs_new :Nn \@@_newfontface :Nnn
395 {
396   \newfontfamily #1 [ BoldFont={},ItalicFont={},SmallCapsFont={},#2 ] {#3}
397 }

```

### 23.2.3 Font feature selection

`\defaultfontfeatures` This macro takes one argument that consists of all of feature options that will be applied by default to all subsequent `\fontspec`, *et al.*, commands. It stores its value in `\g_fontspec_default_fontopts_tl` (initialised empty), which is concatenated with the individual macro choices in the [...] macro.

```

398 \clist_new :N \g_@@_default_fontopts_clist
399 \prop_new :N \g_@@_fontopts_prop

```

```

400 \DeclareDocumentCommand \defaultfontfeatures { t+ o m }
401 {
402   \IfNoValueTF {#2}
403   { \@@_set_default_features :nn {#1} {#3} }
404   { \@@_set_font_default_features :nnn {#1} {#2} {#3} }
405   \ignorespaces
406 }
407 \cs_new :Nn \@@_set_default_features :nn
408 {
409   \IfBooleanTF {#1} \clist_put_right :Nn \clist_set :Nn
410   \g_@@_default_fontopts_clist {#2}
411 }

```

The optional argument specifies a font identifier. Branch for either (a) single token input such as `\rmdefault`, or (b) otherwise assume its a fontname. In that case, strip spaces and file extensions and lower-case to ensure consistency.

```

412 \cs_new :Nn \@@_set_font_default_features :nnn
413 {
414   \clist_map_inline :nn {#2}
415   {
416     \tl_if_single :nTF {##1}
417     { \tl_set :No \l_@@_tmp_tl { \cs :w g_@@_ \cs_to_str :N ##1 _family\cs_end : } }
418     { \@@_sanitise_fontname :Nn \l_@@_tmp_tl {##1} }
419
420     \IfBooleanTF {#1}
421     {
422       \prop_get :NVNF \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_@@_tmp_tl \l_@@_tmpb_tl
423       { \tl_clear :N \l_@@_tmpb_tl }
424       \tl_put_right :Nn \l_@@_tmpb_tl {#3,}
425       \prop_gput :NVV \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_@@_tmp_tl \l_@@_tmpb_tl
426     }
427     {
428       \tl_if_empty :nTF {#3}
429       { \prop_gremove :NV \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_@@_tmp_tl }
430       { \prop_put :NVn \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_@@_tmp_tl {#3,} }
431     }
432   }
433 }

```

`\@@_sanitise_fontname :Nn` Assigns font name #2 to token list variable #1 and strips extension(s) from it in the case of an external font. We strip spaces for luatex for consistency with luaotfload, although I'm not sure this is necessary any more. At one stage this also lowercased the name, but this step has been removed unless someone can remind me why it was necessary.

```

434 \cs_new :Nn \@@_sanitise_fontname :Nn
435 {
436   \tl_set :Nx #1 {#2}
437 \luatex \tl_remove_all :Nn #1 {~}
438   \clist_map_inline :Nn \l_@@_extensions_clist
439   { \tl_remove_once :Nn #1 {##1} }
440 }

```

`\addfontfeatures` In order to be able to extend the feature selection of a given font, two things need to be known : the currently selected features, and the currently selected font. Every time a font

family is created, this information is saved inside a control sequence with the name of the font family itself.

This macro extracts this information, then appends the requested font features to add to the already existing ones, and calls the font again with the top level `\fontspec` command.

The default options are *not* applied (which is why `\g_fontspec_default_fontopts_tl` is emptied inside the group; this is allowed as `\l_fontspec_family_tl` is globally defined in `\fontspec_select:nn`), so this means that the only added features to the font are strictly those specified by this command.

`\addfontfeature` is defined as an alias, as I found that I often typed this instead when adding only a single font feature.

```

441 \bool_new :N \l_@@_disable_defaults_bool
442 \DeclareDocumentCommand \addfontfeatures {m}
443 {
444   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF
445   {
446     \group_begin :
447       \prop_get :cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {options} \l_@@_options_tl
448       \prop_get :cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {fontname} \l_@@_fontname_tl
449       \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_disable_defaults_bool
450       \use :x
451       {
452         \exp_not :N \fontspec_select :nn
453         { \l_@@_options_tl , #1 } {\l_@@_fontname_tl}
454       }
455     \group_end :
456     \fontfamily\l_fontspec_family_tl\selectfont
457   }
458   {
459     \@@_warning :n {addfontfeatures-ignored}
460   }
461   \ignorespaces
462 }
463 \cs_set_eq :NN \addfontfeature \addfontfeatures

```

### 23.2.4 Defining new font features

`\newfontfeature` `\newfontfeature` takes two arguments : the name of the feature tag by which to reference it, and the string that is used to select the font feature.

```

464 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newfontfeature {mm}
465 {
466   \keys_define :nn { fontspec }
467   {
468     #1 .code :n =
469     {
470       \@@_update_featstr :n {#2}
471     }
472   }
473 }

```

`\newAATfeature` This command assigns a new AAT feature by its code (#2,#3) to a new name (#1). Better than `\newfontfeature` because it checks if the feature exists in the font it's being used for.

```

474 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newAATfeature {mmm}
475 {
476   \keys_if_exist :nnF { fontspec } {#1}
477   { \@@_define_font_feature :n {#1} }
478   \keys_if_choice_exist :nnT {fontspec} {#1} {#2}
479   { \@@_warning :nxx {feature-option-overwrite} {#1} {#2} }
480   \@@_define_feature_option :nnnn {#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{ }
481 }

```

`\newopentypefeature` This command assigns a new OpenType feature by its abbreviation (#2) to a new name (#1).  
`\newICUfeature` Better than `\newfontfeature` because it checks if the feature exists in the font it's being used for.

```

482 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newopentypefeature {mmm}
483 {
484   \keys_if_exist :nnF { fontspec / options } {#1}
485   { \@@_define_font_feature :n {#1} }
486   \keys_if_choice_exist :nnT {fontspec} {#1} {#2}
487   { \@@_warning :nxx {feature-option-overwrite} {#1} {#2} }
488   \@@_define_feature_option :nnnn {#1}{#2}{ } {#3}
489 }
490 \cs_set_eq :NN \newICUfeature \newopentypefeature % deprecated

```

`\aliasfontfeature` User commands for renaming font features and font feature options.

```

\aliasfontfeatureoption 491 \bool_new :N \l_@@_alias_bool
492 \DeclareDocumentCommand \aliasfontfeature {mm}
493 {
494   \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_alias_bool
495
496   \clist_map_inline :nn
497   { fontspec, fontspec-preparse, fontspec-preparse-external,
498     fontspec-preparse-nested, fontspec-renderer }
499   {
500
501     \keys_if_exist :nnT {##1} {#1}
502     {
503       \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_alias_bool
504       \@@_alias_font_feature :nn {##1} {#1} {#2}
505     }
506   }
507
508   \bool_if :NF \l_@@_alias_bool
509   { \@@_warning :nx {rename-feature-not-exist} {#1} }
510 }
511
512 \cs_set :Nn \@@_alias_font_feature :nn
513 {
514   \keys_define :nn {#1}
515   { #3 .code :n = { \keys_set :nn {#1} { #2 = {##1} } } }
516 }
517
518 \DeclareDocumentCommand \aliasfontfeatureoption {mmm}
519 { \keys_define :nn { fontspec / #1 } { #3 .meta :n = {#2} } }

```

`\newfontscript` Mostly used internally, but also possibly useful for users, to define new OpenType ‘scripts’, mapping logical names to OpenType script tags. Iterates though the scripts in the selected font to check that it’s a valid feature choice, and then prepends the (X<sub>g</sub>TeX) `\font` feature string with the appropriate script selection tag.

```

520 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newfontscript {mm}
521 {
522   \fontspec_new_script :nn {#1} {#2}
523   \fontspec_new_script :nn {#2} {#2}
524 }

525 \keys_define :nn { fontspec } { Script .choice : }
526 \cs_new :Nn \fontspec_new_script :nn
527 {
528   \keys_define :nn { fontspec } { Script / #1 .code :n =
529     \fontspec_check_script :nTF {#2}
530     {
531       \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_script_tl {#2}
532       \int_set :Nn \l_fontspec_script_int {\l_fontspec_strnum_int}
533     }
534     {
535       \fontspec_check_script :nTF {latn}
536       {
537         \@_warning :nx {script-not-exist-latn} {#1}
538         \keys_set :nn {fontspec} {Script=Latin}
539       }
540       {
541         \@_warning :nx {script-not-exist} {#1}
542       }
543     }
544   }
545 }

```

`\newfontlanguage` Mostly used internally, but also possibly useful for users, to define new OpenType ‘languages’, mapping logical names to OpenType language tags. Iterates though the languages in the selected font to check that it’s a valid feature choice, and then prepends the (X<sub>g</sub>TeX) `\font` feature string with the appropriate language selection tag.

```

546 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newfontlanguage {mm}
547 {
548   \fontspec_new_lang :nn {#1} {#2}
549   \fontspec_new_lang :nn {#2} {#2}
550 }

551 \keys_define :nn { fontspec } { Language .choice : }
552 \cs_new :Nn \fontspec_new_lang :nn
553 {
554   \keys_define :nn { fontspec } { Language / #1 .code :n =
555     \fontspec_check_lang :nTF {#2}
556     {
557       \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {#2}
558       \int_set :Nn \l_fontspec_language_int {\l_fontspec_strnum_int}
559     }
560     {
561       \@_warning :nx {language-not-exist} {#1}

```

```

562     \keys_set :nn { fontspec } { Language = Default }
563   }
564 }
565 }

```

`\DeclareFontsExtensions` dfont would never be uppercase, right?

```

566 \DeclareDocumentCommand \DeclareFontsExtensions {m}
567 {
568   \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_extensions_clist { #1 }
569   \tl_remove_all :Nn \l_@@_extensions_clist {~}
570 }
571 \DeclareFontsExtensions{.otf,.ttf,.OTF,.TTF,.ttc,.TTC,.dfont}

```

### 23.3 Programmer’s interface

These functions are not used directly by fontspec when defining fonts; they are designed to be used by other packages who wish to do font-related things on top of fontspec itself.

Because I haven’t fully explored how these functions will behave in practise, I am not giving them user-level names. As it becomes more clear which of these should be accessible by document writers, I’ll open them up a little more.

All functions are defined assuming that the font to be queried is currently selected as a fontspec font. (I.e., via `\fontspec` or from a `\newfontfamily` macro or from `\setmainfont` and so on.)

```

\fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF Test whether the currently selected font has been loaded by fontspec.
572 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_if_fontspec_font : {TF,T,F}
573 {
574   \cs_if_exist :cTF {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} \prg_return_true : \prg_return_false :
575 }

\fontspec_if_aat_feature :nnTF Conditional to test if the currently selected font contains the AAT feature (#1,#2).
576 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_if_aat_feature :nn {TF,T,F}
577 {
578   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF
579   {
580     \prop_get :cn {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {fontdef} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
581     \@@_font_set :Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
582     \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_atsui_bool
583     {
584       \fontspec_make_AAT_feature_string :nnTF {#1}{#2}
585       \prg_return_true : \prg_return_false :
586     }
587     {
588       \prg_return_false :
589     }
590   }
591   {
592     \prg_return_false :
593   }
594 }

```



`\fontspec_if_opentype :TF` Test whether the currently selected font is an OpenType font. Always true for LuaTeX fonts.

```
595 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_if_opentype : {TF,T,F}
596 {
597   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF
598   {
599     \prop_get :cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {fontdef} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
600     \@@_font_set :Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
601     \@@_set_font_type :
602     \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_ot_bool \prg_return_true : \prg_return_false :
603   }
604   {
605     \prg_return_false :
606   }
607 }
```

`\fontspec_if_feature :nTF` Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType feature #1. E.g. : `\fontspec_if_feature:nTF {pnum} {True} {False}` Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

```
608 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_if_feature :n {TF,T,F}
609 {
610   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF
611   {
612     \prop_get :cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {fontdef} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
613     \@@_font_set :Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
614     \@@_set_font_type :
615     \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
616     {
617       \prop_get :cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {script-num} \l_@@_tmp_tl
618       \int_set :Nn \l_fontspec_script_int {\l_@@_tmp_tl}
619
620       \prop_get :cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {lang-num} \l_@@_tmp_tl
621       \int_set :Nn \l_fontspec_language_int {\l_@@_tmp_tl}
622
623       \prop_get :cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {script-tag} \l_fontspec_script_tl
624       \prop_get :cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {lang-tag} \l_fontspec_lang_tl
625
626       \fontspec_check_ot_feat :nTF {#1} {\prg_return_true :} {\prg_return_false :}
627     }
628     {
629       \prg_return_false :
630     }
631   }
632   {
633     \prg_return_false :
634   }
635 }
```

`\fontspec_if_feature :nnnTF` Test whether the currently selected font with raw OpenType script tag #1 and raw OpenType language tag #2 contains the raw OpenType feature tag #3. E.g. : `\fontspec_if_feature:nTF {latn} {ROM} {pnum}` Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

```
636 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_if_feature :nnn {TF,T,F}
```

```

637 {
638   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF
639   {
640     \prop_get :cn {g_@_ \f@family _prop} {fontdef} \l_@_fontdef_tl
641     \@@_font_set :Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
642     \@@_set_font_type :
643     \bool_if :NTF \l_@_ot_bool
644     {
645       \fontspec_iv_str_to_num :Nn \l_fontspec_script_int {#1}
646       \fontspec_iv_str_to_num :Nn \l_fontspec_language_int {#2}
647       \fontspec_check_ot_feat :nTF {#3} \prg_return_true : \prg_return_false :
648     }
649     { \prg_return_false : }
650   }
651   { \prg_return_false : }
652 }

```

`\fontspec_if_script :nTF` Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType script #1. E.g. : `\fontspec_if_script:nTF {latn} {True} {False}` Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

```

653 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_if_script :n {TF,T,F}
654 {
655   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF
656   {
657     \prop_get :cn {g_@_ \f@family _prop} {fontdef} \l_@_fontdef_tl
658     \@@_font_set :Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
659     \@@_set_font_type :
660     \bool_if :NTF \l_@_ot_bool
661     {
662       \fontspec_check_script :nTF {#1} \prg_return_true : \prg_return_false :
663     }
664     { \prg_return_false : }
665   }
666   { \prg_return_false : }
667 }

```

`\fontspec_if_language :nTF` Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType language tag #1. E.g. : `\fontspec_if_language:nTF {ROM} {True} {False}`. Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

```

668 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_if_language :n {TF,T,F}
669 {
670   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF
671   {
672     \prop_get :cn {g_@_ \f@family _prop} {fontdef} \l_@_fontdef_tl
673     \@@_font_set :Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
674     \@@_set_font_type :
675     \bool_if :NTF \l_@_ot_bool
676     {
677       \prop_get :cn {g_@_ \f@family _prop} {script-num} \l_@_tmp_tl
678       \int_set :Nn \l_fontspec_script_int {\l_@_tmp_tl}
679       \prop_get :cn {g_@_ \f@family _prop} {script-tag} \l_fontspec_script_tl
680     }

```

```

681     \fontspec_check_lang :nTF {#1} \prg_return_true : \prg_return_false :
682     }
683     { \prg_return_false : }
684     }
685     { \prg_return_false : }
686 }

\fontspec_if_language :nnTF Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType language tag #2 in
script #1. E.g.: \fontspec_if_language:nnTF {cyr1} {SRB} {True} {False}. Returns false
if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
687 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_if_language :nn {TF,T,F}
688 {
689   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF
690   {
691     \prop_get :cn {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {fontdef} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
692     \@@_font_set :Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
693     \@@_set_font_type :
694     \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
695     {
696       \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_script_tl {#1}
697       \fontspec_iv_str_to_num :Nn \l_fontspec_script_int {#1}
698       \fontspec_check_lang :nTF {#2} \prg_return_true : \prg_return_false :
699     }
700     { \prg_return_false : }
701   }
702   { \prg_return_false : }
703 }

\fontspec_if_current_script :nTF Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType script tag #1.
704 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_if_current_script :n {TF,T,F}
705 {
706   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF
707   {
708     \prop_get :cn {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {fontdef} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
709     \@@_font_set :Nnn \l_fontspec_font {\l_@@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
710     \@@_set_font_type :
711     \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
712     {
713       \prop_get :cn {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {script-tag} \l_@@_tmp_tl
714       \str_if_eq :nVTF {#1} \l_@@_tmp_tl
715       {\prg_return_true :} {\prg_return_false :}
716     }
717     { \prg_return_false : }
718   }
719   { \prg_return_false : }
720 }

\fontspec_if_current_language :nTF Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType language tag
#1.
721 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_if_current_language :n {TF,T,F}
722 {
723   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font :TF

```

```

724 {
725   \prop_get :cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {fontdef} \l_@@_fontdef_tl
726   \@@_font_set :Nnn \l_fontspeg_font {\l_@@_fontdef_tl} {\f@size pt}
727   \@@_set_font_type :
728   \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
729   {
730     \prop_get :cnN {g_@@_ \f@family _prop} {lang-tag} \l_@@_tmp_tl
731     \str_if_eq :nVTF {#1} \l_@@_tmp_tl
732     {\prg_return_true :} {\prg_return_false :}
733   }
734   { \prg_return_false : }
735 }
736 { \prg_return_false : }
737 }

```

```

\fontspec_set_family :Nnn #1 : family
#2 : fontspec features
#3 : font name

```

Defines a new font family from given *⟨features⟩* and *⟨font⟩*, and stores the name in the variable *⟨family⟩*. See the standard fontspec user commands for applications of this function.

We want to store the actual name of the font family within the *⟨family⟩* variable because the actual L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X family name is automatically generated by fontspec and it's easier to keep it that way.

Please use `\fontspec_set_family:Nnn` instead of `\fontspec_select:nn`, which may change in the future.

```

738 \cs_new :Nn \fontspec_set_family :Nnn
739 {
740   \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_family_label_tl { #1 }
741   \fontspec_select :nn {#2}{#3}
742   \tl_set_eq :NN #1 \l_fontspeg_family_tl
743 }
744 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \fontspec_set_family :Nnn {c}

```

```

\fontspec_set_fontface :NNnn

```

```

745 \cs_new :Nn \fontspec_set_fontface :NNnn
746 {
747   \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_family_label_tl { #1 }
748   \fontspec_select :nn {#3}{#4}
749   \tl_set_eq :NN #1 \l_fontspeg_font
750   \tl_set_eq :NN #2 \l_fontspeg_family_tl
751 }

```

## 23.4 expl3 interface for font loading

```

752 \cs_set :Nn \@@_fontwrap :n { "#1" }
753 \cs_set :Npn \@@_primitive_font_set :Nnn #1#2#3
754 {
755   \font #1 = #2 ~at~ #3 \scan_stop :
756 }
757
758 \cs_set :Npn \@@_primitive_font_gset :Nnn #1#2#3

```

```

759 {
760   \global \font #1 = #2 ~at~ #3 \scan_stop :
761 }
762
763 \cs_set :Npn \@@_font_suppress_not_found_error :
764 {
765   \int_set_eq :NN \xetex_suppressfontnotfounderror :D \c_one
766 }
767
768 \prg_set_conditional :Nnn \@@_font_if_null :N {p,TF,T,F}
769 {
770   \ifx #1 \nullfont
771     \prg_return_true :
772   \else
773     \prg_return_false :
774   \fi
775 }
\c_set :Nnn,\fontspec_gset :Nnn Wrapper around \font_set:Nnn and \font_gset:Nnn.
776 \cs_new :Nn \@@_font_set :Nnn
777 {
778   \@@_primitive_font_set :Nnn #1 { \@@_fontwrap :n {#2} } {#3}
779 }
780 \cs_new :Nn \@@_font_gset :Nnn
781 {
782   \@@_primitive_font_gset :Nnn #1 { \@@_fontwrap :n {#2} } {#3}
783 }
\font_glyph_if_exist :NnTF
784 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \font_glyph_if_exist :Nn {p,TF,T,F}
785 {
786   \etex_iffontchar :D #1 #2 \scan_stop :
787   \prg_return_true :
788   \else :
789     \prg_return_false :
790   \fi :
791 }

```

## 23.5 Internal macros

The macros from here in are used internally by all those defined above. They are not designed to remain consistent between versions.

`\fontspec_select :nn` This is the command that defines font families for use, the underlying procedure of all `\fontspec`-like commands. Given a list of font features (#1) for a requested font (#2), it will define an NFSS family for that font and put the family name (globally) into `\l_fontspec_family_tl`. The T<sub>E</sub>X ‘`\font`’ command is (globally) stored in `\l_fontspec_font`.

This macro does its processing inside a group to attempt to restrict the scope of its internal processing. This works to some degree to insulate the internal commands from having to be manually cleared.

Some often-used variables to know about :

— `\l_fontspec_fontname_tl` is used as the generic name of the font being defined.

- \l\_@@\_fontid\_tl is the unique identifier of the font with all its features.
- \l\_fontspec\_fontname\_up\_tl is the font specifically to be used as the upright font.
- \l\_@@\_basename\_tl is the (immutable) original argument used for \*-replacing.
- \l\_fontspec\_font is the plain T<sub>E</sub>X font of the upright font requested.

```

792 \cs_set :Nn \fontspec_select :nn
793 {
794   \group_begin :
795   \@@_font_suppress_not_found_error :
796   \@@_init :
797
798   \tl_set :Nx \l_fontspec_fontname_tl    {#2}
799   \tl_set :Nx \l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl {#2}
800   \tl_set :Nx \l_@@_basename_tl         {#2}
801
802   \@@_load_external_fontoptions :Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_tl {#2}
803   \@@_extract_all_features :n {#1}
804   \@@_preparse_features :
805
806   \@@_load_font :
807   \@@_set_scriptlang :
808   \@@_get_features :Nn \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist {}
809   \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_firsttime_bool
810
811   \@@_save_family :nTF {#2}
812   {
813     \@@_save_fontinfo :
814     \@@_find_autofonts :
815     \DeclareFontFamily{\g_fontspec_encoding_tl}{\l_fontspec_family_tl}{}
816     \@@_set_faces :
817     \@@_info :nxx {defining-font} {#1} {#2}
818     (*debug)
819     \typeout{"\l_@@_fontid_tl"~ defined.}
820     \@@_warning :nxx {defining-font} {#1} {#2}
821   }
822   {
823     (*debug)
824     \typeout{"\l_@@_fontid_tl"~ already~ defined~ apparently.}
825   }
826   \group_end :
827 }

```

**\load\_external\_fontoptions :Nn** Load a possible .fontspec font configuration file. This file could set font-specific options for the font about to be loaded.

```

830 \cs_new :Nn \@@_load_external_fontoptions :Nn
831 {
832   \@@_sanitise_fontname :Nn #1 {#2}
833   \tl_set :Nx \l_@@_ext_filename_tl {#1.fontspec}
834   \tl_remove_all :Nn \l_@@_ext_filename_tl {~}
835   \prop_if_in :NVF \g_@@_fontopts_prop #1

```

```

836     {
837         \exp_args :No \file_if_exist :nT { \l_@@_ext_filename_tl }
838         { \file_input :n { \l_@@_ext_filename_tl } }
839     }
840 }

\@@_extract_features :
841 \cs_new :Nn \@@_extract_all_features :n
842 {
843     \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_disable_defaults_bool
844     {
845         \clist_set :Nx \l_@@_all_features_clist {#1}
846     }
847     {
848         \prop_get :NVNF \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_fontspec_fontname_tl \l_@@_fontopts_clist
849         { \clist_clear :N \l_@@_fontopts_clist }
850
851         \prop_get :NVNF \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_@@_family_label_tl \l_@@_family_fontopts_clist
852         { \clist_clear :N \l_@@_family_fontopts_clist }
853         \tl_clear :N \l_@@_family_label_tl
854
855         \clist_set :Nx \l_@@_all_features_clist
856         {
857             \g_@@_default_fontopts_clist,
858             \l_@@_family_fontopts_clist,
859             \l_@@_fontopts_clist,
860             #1
861         }
862     }
863     \tl_set :Nx \l_@@_fontid_tl { \tl_to_str :N \l_fontspec_fontname_tl- :-\tl_to_str :N \l_@@_all_fea
864 }*debug}
865 \typeout{fontid : \l_@@_fontid_tl}
866 }/debug}
867 }

\@@_preparse_features : #1 : feature options
                        #2 : font name
                        Perform the (multi-step) feature parsing process.
                        Convert the requested features to font definition strings. First the features are parsed
                        for information about font loading (whether it's a named font or external font, etc.), and
                        then information is extracted for the names of the other shape fonts.
868 \cs_new :Nn \@@_preparse_features :
869 {
870     \@@_if_detect_external :VT \l_@@_basename_tl
871     { \keys_set :nn {fontspec-preparse-external} {ExternalLocation} }
872
873     \keys_set_known :nxN {fontspec-preparse-external}
874     { \l_@@_all_features_clist }
875     \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist

```

When `\l_fontspec_fontname_tl` is augmented with a prefix or whatever to create the name of the upright font (`\l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl`), this latter is the new ‘general font name’ to use.

```

876 \tl_set_eq :Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl
877 \keys_set_known :nxN {fontspec-renderer} {\l_@@_keys_leftover_clist}
878 \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
879 \keys_set_known :nxN {fontspec-preparse} {\l_@@_keys_leftover_clist}
880 \l_@@_fontfeat_clist
881 }

```

`\@@_load_font :`

```

882 \cs_new :Nn \@@_load_font :
883 {
884   \@@_font_set :Nnn \l_fontspec_font
885     { \@@_fullname :n {\l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl} } {\f@size pt}
886   \@@_font_if_null :NT \l_fontspec_font { \@@_error :nx {font-not-found} {\l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl}
887     \@@_set_font_type :
888     \@@_font_gset :Nnn \l_fontspec_font
889       { \@@_fullname :n {\l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl} } {\f@size pt}
890   \l_fontspec_font % this is necessary for LuaLaTeX to check the scripts properly
891 }

```

`\@@_if_detect_external :nnT` Check if either the fontname ends with a known font extension.

```

892 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \@@_if_detect_external :n {T}
893 {
894   \clist_map_inline :Nn \l_@@_extensions_clist
895   {
896     \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_tmpa_bool
897     \tl_if_in :nnT {#1 <= end_of_string} {##1 <= end_of_string}
898       { \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_tmpa_bool \clist_map_break : }
899   }
900   \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_tmpa_bool \prg_return_true : \prg_return_false :
901 }
902 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \@@_if_detect_external :nT {V}

```

`\@@_fullname :n` Constructs the complete font name based on a common piece of info.

```

903 \cs_set :Nn \@@_fullname :n
904 {
905   \@@_namewrap :n { #1 \l_@@_extension_tl }
906   \l_fontspec_renderer_tl
907   \l_@@_optical_size_tl
908 }

```

`\@@_set_scriptlang :` Only necessary for OpenType fonts. First check if the font supports scripts, then apply defaults if none are explicitly requested. Similarly with the language settings.

```

909 \cs_new :Nn \@@_set_scriptlang :
910 {
911   \bool_if :NT \l_@@_firsttime_bool
912   {
913     \tl_if_empty :NTF \l_@@_script_name_tl
914     {

```



```

915 \fontspec_check_script :nTF {latn}
916 {
917   \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_script_name_tl {Latin}
918   \tl_if_empty :NT \l_@@_lang_name_tl
919   {
920     \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_lang_name_tl {Default}
921   }
922   \keys_set :nx {fontspec} {Script=\l_@@_script_name_tl}
923   \keys_set :nx {fontspec} {Language=\l_@@_lang_name_tl}
924 }
925 {
926   \@@_info :n {no-scripts}
927 }
928 }
929 {
930   \tl_if_empty :NT \l_@@_lang_name_tl
931   {
932     \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_lang_name_tl {Default}
933   }
934   \keys_set :nx {fontspec} {Script=\l_@@_script_name_tl}
935   \keys_set :nx {fontspec} {Language=\l_@@_lang_name_tl}
936 }
937 }
938 }

```

`\@@_save_family :nTF` Check if the family is unique and, if so, save its information. (`\addfontfeature` and other macros use this data.) Then the font family and its shapes are defined in the NFSS.

Now we have a unique (in fact, too unique!) string that contains the family name and every option in abbreviated form. This is used with a counter to create a simple NFSS family name for the font we're selecting.

```

939 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \@@_save_family :n {TF}
940 {
941   \debug\typeout{save~ family :~ #1}
942   \cs_if_exist :NT \l_@@_nfss_fam_tl
943   {
944     \cs_set_eq :cN {g_@@_UID_\l_@@_fontid_tl} \l_@@_nfss_fam_tl
945   }
946   \cs_if_exist :cF {g_@@_UID_\l_@@_fontid_tl}
947   {
948     % The font name is fully expanded, in case it's defined in terms of macros, before having its space
949     \tl_set :Nx \l_@@_tmp_tl {#1}
950     \tl_remove_all :Nn \l_@@_tmp_tl {~}
951
952     \cs_if_exist :cTF {g_@@_family_ \l_@@_tmp_tl _int}
953     { \int_gincr :c {g_@@_family_ \l_@@_tmp_tl _int} }
954     { \int_new :c {g_@@_family_ \l_@@_tmp_tl _int} }
955
956     \tl_gset :cx {g_@@_UID_\l_@@_fontid_tl}
957     {
958       \l_@@_tmp_tl ( \int_use :c {g_@@_family_ \l_@@_tmp_tl _int} )
959     }
960   }

```

```

961 \tl_gset :Nv \l_fontspec_family_tl {g_@@_UID_\l_@@_fontid_tl}
962 \cs_if_exist :cTF {g_@@_ \l_fontspec_family_tl _prop}
963 \prg_return_false : \prg_return_true :
964 }

```

`\@@_save_fontinfo :nn` Saves the relevant font information for future processing.

```

965 \cs_new :Nn \@@_save_fontinfo :
966 {
967   \prop_new :c {g_@@_ \l_fontspec_family_tl _prop}
968   \prop_gput :cnx {g_@@_ \l_fontspec_family_tl _prop} {fontname} { \l_@@_basename_tl }
969   \prop_gput :cnx {g_@@_ \l_fontspec_family_tl _prop} {options} { \l_@@_all_features_clist }
970   \prop_gput :cnx {g_@@_ \l_fontspec_family_tl _prop} {fontdef}
971   {
972     \@@_fullname :n {\l_fontspec_fontname_tl} :
973     \l_@@_pre_feat_sclist \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist
974   }
975   \prop_gput :cnV {g_@@_ \l_fontspec_family_tl _prop} {script-num} \l_fontspec_script_int
976   \prop_gput :cnV {g_@@_ \l_fontspec_family_tl _prop} {lang-num} \l_fontspec_language_int
977   \prop_gput :cnV {g_@@_ \l_fontspec_family_tl _prop} {script-tag} \l_fontspec_script_tl
978   \prop_gput :cnV {g_@@_ \l_fontspec_family_tl _prop} {lang-tag} \l_fontspec_lang_tl
979
980 }

```

### 23.5.1 Setting font shapes in a family

All NFSS specifications take their default values, so if any of them are redefined, the shapes will be selected to fit in with the current state. For example, if `\bfdefault` is redefined to `b`, all bold shapes defined by this package will also be assigned to `b`.

The combination shapes are searched first because they use information that may be redefined in the single cases. E.g., if no bold font is specified then `set_autofont` will attempt to set it. This has subtle/small ramifications on the logic of choosing the bold italic font.

`\@@_find_autofonts :`

```

981 \cs_new :Nn \@@_find_autofonts :
982 {
983   \bool_if :nF {\l_@@_noit_bool || \l_@@_nobf_bool}
984   {
985     \@@_set_autofont :Nnn \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl {\l_fontspec_fontname_it_tl} {/B}
986     \@@_set_autofont :Nnn \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl {\l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl} {/I}
987     \@@_set_autofont :Nnn \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl {\l_fontspec_fontname_tl} {/BI}
988   }
989
990   \bool_if :NF \l_@@_nobf_bool
991   {
992     \@@_set_autofont :Nnn \l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl {\l_fontspec_fontname_tl} {/B}
993   }
994
995   \bool_if :NF \l_@@_noit_bool
996   {
997     \@@_set_autofont :Nnn \l_fontspec_fontname_it_tl {\l_fontspec_fontname_tl} {/I}
998   }
999

```

```

1000 \@@_set_autofont :Nnn \l_fontspec_fontname_bfsl_tl {\l_fontspec_fontname_sl_tl} {/B}
1001 }

```

\@@\_set\_faces :

```

1002 \cs_new :Nn \@@_set_faces :
1003 {
1004 \@@_add_nfssfont :oooo \mddefault \updefault \l_fontspec_fontname_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_up_clist
1005 \@@_add_nfssfont :oooo \bfdefault \updefault \l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_bf_clist
1006 \@@_add_nfssfont :oooo \mddefault \itdefault \l_fontspec_fontname_it_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_it_clist
1007 \@@_add_nfssfont :oooo \mddefault \sldefault \l_fontspec_fontname_sl_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_sl_clist
1008 \@@_add_nfssfont :oooo \bfdefault \itdefault \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist
1009 \@@_add_nfssfont :oooo \bfdefault \sldefault \l_fontspec_fontname_bfsl_tl \l_@@_fontfeat_bfsl_clist
1010
1011 \prop_map_inline :Nn \l_@@_nfssfont_prop { \@@_set_faces_aux :nnnnn ##2 }
1012 }
1013 \cs_new :Nn \@@_set_faces_aux :nnnnn
1014 {
1015 \fontspec_complete_fontname :Nn \l_@@_curr_fontname_tl {#3}
1016 \@@_make_font_shapes :Nnnnn \l_@@_curr_fontname_tl {#1} {#2} {#4} {#5}
1017 }

```

### 23.5.2 Fonts

\@@\_set\_font\_type : Now check if the font is to be rendered with ATSUI or Harfbuzz. This will either be automatic (based on the font type), or specified by the user via a font feature.

This macro sets booleans accordingly depending if the font in \l\_fontspec\_font is an AAT font or an OpenType font or a font with feature axes (either AAT or Multiple Master), respectively.

```

1018 \cs_new :Nn \@@_set_font_type :
1019 {*xetex*}
1020 {
1021 \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_tfm_bool
1022 \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_atsui_bool
1023 \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_ot_bool
1024 \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_mm_bool
1025 \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_graphite_bool
1026 \ifcase\XeTeXfonttype\l_fontspec_font
1027 \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_tfm_bool
1028 \or
1029 \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_atsui_bool
1030 \ifnum\XeTeXcountvariations\l_fontspec_font > \c_zero
1031 \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_mm_bool
1032 \fi
1033 \or
1034 \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_ot_bool
1035 \fi

```

If automatic, the \l\_fontspec\_renderer\_tl token list will still be empty (other suffices that could be added will be later in the feature processing), and if it is indeed still empty, assign it a value so that the other weights of the font are specifically loaded with the same renderer.

```

1036 \tl_if_empty :NT \l_fontspec_renderer_tl
1037 {

```

```

1038 \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_atsui_bool
1039 { \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_renderer_tl {/AAT} }
1040 {
1041   \bool_if :NT \l_@@_ot_bool
1042   { \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_renderer_tl {/OT} }
1043 }
1044 }
1045 }
1046 </xetex>
1047 <*luatex>
1048 {
1049   \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_ot_bool
1050 }
1051 </luatex>

```

`\@@_set_autofont :Nnn #1 : Font name tl  
#2 : Base font name  
#3 : Font name modifier`

This function looks for font with *<name>* and *<modifier>* #2#3, and if found (i.e., different to font with name #2) stores it in tl #1. A modifier is something like /B to look for a bold font, for example.

We can't match external fonts in this way (in X<sub>Y</sub>TeX anyway; todo : test with LuaTeX). If *<font name tl>* is not empty, then it's already been specified by the user so abort. If *<Base font name>* is not given, we also abort for obvious reasons.

If *<font name tl>* is empty, then proceed. If not found, *<font name tl>* remains empty. Otherwise, we have a match.

```

1052 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \tl_if_empty :nF {x}
1053 \cs_new :Nn \@@_set_autofont :Nnn
1054 {
1055   \bool_if :NF \l_@@_external_bool
1056   {
1057     \tl_if_empty :xF {#2}
1058     {
1059       \tl_if_empty :NT #1
1060       {
1061         \@@_if_autofont :nnTF {#2} {#3}
1062         { \tl_set :Nx #1 {#2#3} }
1063         { \@@_info :nx {no-font-shape} {#2#3} }
1064       }
1065     }
1066   }
1067 }
1068
1069 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \@@_if_autofont :nn {T,TF}
1070 {
1071   \@@_font_set :Nnn \l_tmpa_font { \@@_fullname :n {#1} } { \f@size pt}
1072   \@@_font_set :Nnn \l_tmpb_font { \@@_fullname :n {#1#2} } { \f@size pt}
1073   \str_if_eq_x :nnTF { \fontname \l_tmpa_font } { \fontname \l_tmpb_font }
1074   { \prg_return_false : }
1075   { \prg_return_true : }
1076 }

```

```

\@@_make_font_shapes :Nnnnn #1 : Font name
                             #2 : Font series
                             #3 : Font shape
                             #4 : Font features
                             #5 : Size features
                             This macro eventually uses \DeclareFontShape to define the font shape in question.
1077 \cs_new :Nn \@@_make_font_shapes :Nnnnn
1078 {
1079   \group_begin :
1080     \keys_set_known :nxN {fontspec-preparse-external} { #4 } \l_@@_leftover_clist
1081     \@@_load_fontname :n {#1}
1082     \@@_declare_shape :nnxx {#2} {#3} { \l_@@_fontopts_clist, \l_@@_leftover_clist } {#5}
1083   \group_end :
1084 }
1085
1086 \cs_new :Nn \@@_load_fontname :n
1087 {
1088   \@@_load_external_fontoptions :Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_tl {#1}
1089   \prop_get :NVNF \g_@@_fontopts_prop \l_fontspec_fontname_tl \l_@@_fontopts_clist
1090   { \clist_clear :N \l_@@_fontopts_clist }
1091   \@@_font_set :Nnn \l_fontspec_font { \@@_fullname :n { \l_fontspec_fontname_tl } } { \f@size pt }
1092   \@@_font_if_null :NT \l_fontspec_font { \@@_error :nx {font-not-found} {#1} }
1093 }

\@@_declare_shape :nnnn #1 : Font series
                        #2 : Font shape
                        #3 : Font features
                        #4 : Size features
                        Wrapper for \DeclareFontShape. And finally the actual font shape declaration using
                        \l_@@_nfss_tl defined above. \l_@@_postadjust_tl is defined in various places to deal
                        with things like the hyphenation character and interword spacing.
                        The main part is to loop through SizeFeatures arguments, which are of the form
                        SizeFeatures={{<one>},{<two>},{<three>}}.
1094 \cs_new :Nn \@@_declare_shape :nnnn
1095 {
1096   \tl_clear :N \l_@@_nfss_tl
1097   \tl_clear :N \l_@@_nfss_sc_tl
1098   \tl_set_eq :NN \l_@@_saved_fontname_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
1099
1100   \exp_args :Nx \clist_map_inline :nn {#4}
1101   {
1102     \tl_clear :N \l_@@_size_tl
1103     \tl_set_eq :NN \l_@@_sizedfont_tl \l_@@_saved_fontname_tl % in case not spec'ed
1104
1105     \keys_set_known :nxN {fontspec-sizing} { \exp_after :wN \use :n ##1 }
1106     \l_@@_sizing_leftover_clist
1107     \tl_if_empty :NT \l_@@_size_tl { \@@_error :n {no-size-info} }
1108
1109     % "normal"
1110     \@@_load_fontname :n { \l_@@_sizedfont_tl }
1111     \@@_setup_nfss :Nnn \l_@@_nfss_tl {#3} {}

```

```

1112
1113 % small caps
1114 \clist_set_eq :NN \l_@@_fontfeat_curr_clist \l_@@_fontfeat_sc_clist
1115
1116 \bool_if :NF \l_@@_nosc_bool
1117 {
1118   \tl_if_empty :NTF \l_fontspeg_fontname_sc_tl
1119   {
1120 (debug)      \typeout{Attempting~ small~ caps?}
1121   \@@_make_smallcaps :TF
1122   {
1123 (debug)      \typeout{Small~ caps~ found.}
1124   \clist_put_left :Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_curr_clist {Letters=SmallCaps}
1125   }
1126   {
1127 (debug)      \typeout{Small~ caps~ not~ found.}
1128   \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_nosc_bool
1129   }
1130   }
1131   { \@@_load_fontname :n { \l_fontspeg_fontname_sc_tl } }% local for each size
1132   }
1133
1134 \bool_if :NF \l_@@_nosc_bool
1135 {
1136   \@@_setup_nfss :Nnn \l_@@_nfss_sc_tl {#3} { \l_@@_fontfeat_curr_clist }
1137   }
1138
1139 }
1140
1141 \@@_declare_shapes_normal :nn {#1} {#2}
1142 \@@_declare_shape_slanted :nn {#1} {#2}
1143 \@@_declare_shape_loginfo :nnn {#1} {#2} {#3}
1144 }
1145 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \@@_declare_shape :nnnn {nnxx}
1146
1147 \cs_new :Nn \@@_setup_nfss :Nnn
1148 {
1149   \@@_get_features :Nn \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist
1150   { #2 , \l_@@_sizing_leftover_clist , #3 }
1151
1152   \tl_put_right :Nx #1
1153   {
1154     <\l_@@_size_tl> \l_@@_scale_tl
1155     \@@_fontwrap :n
1156     {
1157       \@@_fullname :n { \l_fontspeg_fontname_tl }
1158       : \l_@@_pre_feat_sclist \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist
1159     }
1160   }
1161 }
1162

```

```

1163 \cs_new :Nn \@@_declare_shapes_normal :nn
1164 {
1165   \@@_DeclareFontShape :xxxxxx {\g_fontspec_encoding_tl} {\l_fontspec_family_tl}
1166     {#1} {#2} {\l_@@_nfss_tl}{\l_@@_postadjust_tl}
1167
1168   \bool_if :NF \l_@@_nosc_bool
1169   {
1170     \@@_DeclareFontShape :xxxxxx {\g_fontspec_encoding_tl} {\l_fontspec_family_tl}
1171       {#1}
1172       {\str_if_eq_x :nnTF {#2} {\itdefault} \sidefault \scdefault}
1173       {\l_@@_nfss_sc_tl}{\l_@@_postadjust_tl}
1174   }
1175 }
1176
1177 \cs_new :Nn \@@_DeclareFontShape :nnnnnn
1178 {
1179   \group_begin :
1180     \normalsize
1181     \cs_undefine :c {#1/#2/#3/#4/\f@size}
1182   \group_end :
1183   \DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}
1184 }
1185 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \@@_DeclareFontShape :nnnnnn {xxxxxx}

```

This extra stuff for the slanted shape substitution is a little bit awkward. We define the slanted shape to be a synonym for it when (a) we're defining an italic font, but also (b) when the default slanted shape isn't 'it'. (Presumably this turned up once in a test and I realised it caused problems. I doubt this would happen much.)

We should test when a slanted font has been specified and not run this code if so, but the \@@\_set\_slanted: code will overwrite this anyway if necessary.

```

1186 \cs_new :Nn \@@_declare_shape_slanted :nn
1187 {
1188   \bool_if :nT
1189   {
1190     \str_if_eq_x_p :nn {#2} {\itdefault} &&
1191     !(\str_if_eq_x_p :nn {\itdefault} {\sldefault})
1192   }
1193   {
1194     \@@_DeclareFontShape :xxxxxx {\g_fontspec_encoding_tl}{\l_fontspec_family_tl}{#1}{\sldefault}
1195     {<->ssub*\l_fontspec_family_tl/#1/\itdefault}{\l_@@_postadjust_tl}
1196   }
1197 }

```

Lastly some informative messaging.

```

1198 \cs_new :Nn \@@_declare_shape_loginfo :nnn
1199 {
1200   \tl_gput_right :Nx \l_fontspec_defined_shapes_tl
1201   {
1202     \exp_not :n { \ \ \ }
1203     *~ '\exp_not :N \str_case :nnF {#1/#2}
1204     {
1205       {\mddefault/\updefault} {normal}
1206       {\bfdefault/\updefault} {bold}

```

```

1207     {\mddefault/\itdefault} {italic}
1208     {\bfdefault/\itdefault} {bold~ italic}
1209   } {\#2/\#3}'~
1210   with~ NFSS~ spec. : \exp_not :N \\\
1211   \l_@@_nfss_tl
1212   \exp_not :n { \\\ }
1213   *~ '\exp_not :N \str_case :nnF {\#1/\scdefault}
1214   {
1215     {\mddefault/\scdefault} {small~ caps}
1216     {\bfdefault/\scdefault} {bold~ small~ caps}
1217     {\mddefault/\sidefault} {italic~ small~ caps}
1218     {\bfdefault/\sidefault} {bold~ italic~ small~ caps}
1219   } {\#2/\#3}'~
1220   with~ NFSS~ spec. : \exp_not :N \\\
1221   \l_@@_nfss_sc_tl
1222   \tl_if_empty :NF \l_@@_postadjust_tl
1223   {
1224     \exp_not :N \\\ and~ font~ adjustment~ code : \exp_not :N \\\ \l_@@_postadjust_tl
1225   }
1226 }
1227 }

```

`\l_@@_pre_feat_sclist` These are the features always applied to a font selection before other features.

```

1228 \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_pre_feat_sclist
1229 \<xtex>
1230 {
1231   \bool_if :NT \l_@@_ot_bool
1232   {
1233     \tl_if_empty :NF \l_fonts_spec_script_tl
1234     {
1235       script = \l_fonts_spec_script_tl ;
1236       language = \l_fonts_spec_lang_tl ;
1237     }
1238   }
1239 }
1240 \</xtex>
1241 \<luatex>
1242 {
1243   mode = \l_fonts_spec_mode_tl ;
1244   \tl_if_empty :NF \l_fonts_spec_script_tl
1245   {
1246     script = \l_fonts_spec_script_tl ;
1247     language = \l_fonts_spec_lang_tl ;
1248   }
1249 }
1250 \</luatex>

```

### 23.5.3 Features

`\@@_get_features :Nn` This macro is a wrapper for `\keys_set :nn` which expands and adds a default specification to the original passed options. It begins by initialising the commands used to hold font-feature specific strings. Its argument is any additional features to prepend to the default.



```

1251 \cs_set :Nn \l_@@_get_features :Nn
1252 {
1253   \sclist_clear :N \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist
1254   \tl_clear :N \l_@@_scale_tl
1255   \tl_set_eq :NN \l_@@_opacity_tl \g_@@_opacity_tl
1256   \tl_set_eq :NN \l_@@_hexcol_tl \g_@@_hexcol_tl
1257   \tl_set_eq :NN \l_@@_postadjust_tl \g_@@_postadjust_tl
1258   \tl_clear :N \l_@@_wordspace_adjust_tl
1259   \tl_clear :N \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl
1260
1261   \keys_set_known :nxN {fontspec-renderer} {\l_@@_fontfeat_clist,#2}
1262   \l_@@_keys_leftover_clist
1263   \keys_set :nx {fontspec} {\l_@@_keys_leftover_clist}
1264
1265   Finish the colour specification. Do not set the colour if not explicitly spec'd else \color
1266   (using specials) will not work.
1267
1268   \str_if_eq_x :nnF { \l_@@_hexcol_tl \l_@@_opacity_tl }
1269   { \g_@@_hexcol_tl \g_@@_opacity_tl }
1270   {
1271     \l_@@_update_featstr :n { color = \l_@@_hexcol_tl\l_@@_opacity_tl }
1272   }
1273
1274   \tl_set_eq :NN #1 \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist
1275 }

```

**\l\_@@\_init :** Initialisations that either need to occur globally : (all setting of these variables is done locally inside a group)

```

1276 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_family_label_tl
1277 \tl_clear :N \l_fonts_spec_fontname_bf_tl
1278 \tl_clear :N \l_fonts_spec_fontname_it_tl
1279 \tl_clear :N \l_fonts_spec_fake_slant_tl
1280 \tl_clear :N \l_fonts_spec_fake_emojbolden_tl
1281 \tl_clear :N \l_fonts_spec_fontname_bfit_tl
1282 \tl_clear :N \l_fonts_spec_fontname_sl_tl
1283 \tl_clear :N \l_fonts_spec_fontname_bfsl_tl
1284 \tl_clear :N \l_fonts_spec_fontname_sc_tl
1285 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_fontfeat_up_clist
1286 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_fontfeat_bf_clist
1287 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_fontfeat_it_clist
1288 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist
1289 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_fontfeat_sl_clist
1290 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_fontfeat_bfsl_clist
1291 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_fontfeat_sc_clist
1292 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_script_name_tl
1293 \tl_clear :N \l_fonts_spec_script_tl
1294 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_lang_name_tl
1295 \tl_clear :N \l_fonts_spec_lang_tl
1296 \tl_set :Nn \g_@@_postadjust_tl { \l_@@_wordspace_adjust_tl \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl }
1297
1298 \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_sizefeat_clist {Size={-}}
1299 \tl_new :N \g_@@_hexcol_tl
1300 \tl_new :N \g_@@_opacity_tl

```

```

1297\tl_set :Nn \g_@@_hexcol_tl {000000}
1298\tl_set :Nn \g_@@_opacity_tl {FF~}

Or once per fontspec font invocation : (Some of these may be redundant. Check whether
they're assigned to globally or not.)

1299\cs_set :Npn \@@_init :
1300 {
1301   \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_ot_bool
1302   \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_firsttime_bool
1303   \cs_set :Npn \@@_namewrap :n ##1 { ##1 }
1304   \tl_clear :N \l_@@_optical_size_tl
1305   \tl_clear :N \l_fontspeg_renderer_tl
1306   \tl_clear :N \l_fontspeg_defined_shapes_tl
1307   \tl_clear :N \g_@@_curr_series_tl
1308
1309   % This is for detecting font families when assigning default features.
1310   % Replace defaults for the standard families because they're not set in the usual way :
1311   \exp_args :NV \str_case :nnF {\l_@@_family_label_tl}
1312   {
1313     {\rmdefault} { \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_family_label_tl {\g_@@_rmfamily_family} }
1314     {\sfdefault} { \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_family_label_tl {\g_@@_sffamily_family} }
1315     {\ttdefault} { \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_family_label_tl {\g_@@_ttfamily_family} }
1316   }{}
1317
1318 (*luatex)
1319   \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspeg_mode_tl {node}
1320   \int_set :Nn \luatex_prehyphenchar :D { '- } % fixme
1321   \int_zero :N \luatex_posthyphenchar :D % fixme
1322   \int_zero :N \luatex_preexhyphenchar :D % fixme
1323   \int_zero :N \luatex_postexhyphenchar :D % fixme
1324 \luatex
1325 }

```

`\@@_make_smallcaps :TF` This macro checks if the font contains small caps.

```

1326\cs_set :Nn \fontspec_make_ot_smallcaps :TF
1327 {
1328   \fontspec_check_ot_feat :nTF {+smcp} {#1} {#2}
1329 }
1330 (*xetex)
1331\cs_set :Nn \@@_make_smallcaps :TF
1332 {
1333   \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
1334   { \fontspec_make_ot_smallcaps :TF {#1} {#2} }
1335   {
1336     \bool_if :NT \l_@@_atsui_bool
1337     { \fontspec_make_AAT_feature_string :nnTF {3}{3} {#1} {#2} }
1338   }
1339 }
1340 \xetex
1341 (*luatex)
1342\cs_set_eq :NN \@@_make_smallcaps :TF \fontspec_make_ot_smallcaps :TF
1343 \luatex

```

`\sclist_put_right :Nn` I'm hardly going to write an 'sclist' module but a couple of functions are useful. Here, items in semi-colon lists are always followed by a semi-colon (as opposed to the s.-c's being placed between elements) so we can append sclists without worrying about it.

```
1344 \cs_set_eq :NN \sclist_clear :N \tl_clear :N
1345 \cs_new :Nn \sclist_gput_right :Nn
1346 { \tl_gput_right :Nn #1 {#2;} }
1347 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \sclist_gput_right :Nn {Nx}
```

`\@@_update_featstr :n` `\l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist` is the string used to define the list of specific font features. Each time another font feature is requested, this macro is used to add that feature to the list. Font features are separated by semicolons.

```
1348 \cs_new :Nn \@@_update_featstr :n
1349 {
1350   \bool_if :NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
1351   {
1352     \sclist_gput_right :Nx \l_@@_rawfeatures_sclist {#1}
1353   }
1354 }
```

`\fontspec_make_feature :nnn` This macro is called by each feature key selected, and runs according to which type of font is selected.

```
1355 \cs_new :Nn \fontspec_make_feature :nnn
1356 <*xetex>
1357 {
1358   \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
1359   { \fontspec_make_OT_feature :n {#3} }
1360   {
1361     \bool_if :NT \l_@@_atsui_bool
1362     { \fontspec_make_AAT_feature :nn {#1}{#2} }
1363   }
1364 }
1365 </xetex>
1366 <*luatex>
1367 { \fontspec_make_OT_feature :n {#3} }
1368 </luatex>
1369 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \fontspec_make_feature :nnn {nnx}

1370 \cs_new :Nn \fontspec_make_AAT_feature :nn
1371 {
1372   \tl_if_empty :nTF {#1}
1373   { \@@_warning :n {aat-feature-not-exist} }
1374   {
1375     \fontspec_make_AAT_feature_string :nnTF {#1}{#2}
1376     {
1377       \@@_update_featstr :n {\l_fontspec_feature_string_tl}
1378     }
1379     { \@@_warning :nx {aat-feature-not-exist-in-font} {#1,#2} }
1380   }
1381 }
1382 \cs_new :Nn \fontspec_make_OT_feature :n
1383 {
1384   \tl_if_empty :nTF {#1}
```

```

1385 { \@@_warning :n {icu-feature-not-exist} }
1386 {
1387   \fontspec_check_ot_feat :nTF {#1}
1388   {
1389     \@@_update_featstr :n {#1}
1390   }
1391   { \@@_warning :nx {icu-feature-not-exist-in-font} {#1} }
1392 }
1393 }
1394 \cs_new_protected :Nn \fontspec_make_numbered_feature :nn
1395 {
1396   \fontspec_check_ot_feat :nTF {#1}
1397   {
1398     \@@_update_featstr :n { #1 = #2 }
1399   }
1400   { \@@_warning :nx {icu-feature-not-exist-in-font} {#1} }
1401 }
1402 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \fontspec_make_numbered_feature :nn {xn}

\@@_define_font_feature :n These macros are used in order to simplify font feature definition later on.
\@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn 1403 \cs_new :Nn \@@_define_font_feature :n
\fontspec_define_numbered_feat :nnnn 1404 {
1405   \keys_define :nn {fontspec} { #1 .multichoice : }
1406 }
1407 \cs_new :Nn \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn
1408 {
1409   \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
1410   {
1411     #1/#2 .code :n = { \fontspec_make_feature :nnn{#3}{#4}{#5} }
1412   }
1413 }
1414 \cs_new :Nn \fontspec_define_numbered_feat :nnnn
1415 {
1416   \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
1417   {
1418     #1/#2 .code :n =
1419     { \fontspec_make_numbered_feature :nn {#3}{#4} }
1420   }
1421 }

\fontspec_make_AAT_feature_string :nnTF This macro takes the numerical codes for a font feature and creates a specified macro contain-
ing the string required in the font definition to turn that feature on or off. Used primarily
in [...], but also used to check if small caps exists in the requested font (see page 80).
For exclusive selectors, it's easy; just grab the string : For non-exclusive selectors, it's
a little more complex. If the selector is even, it corresponds to switching the feature on. If
the selector is odd, it corresponds to switching the feature off. But XYTeX doesn't return a
selector string for this number, since the feature is defined for the 'switching on' value. So
we need to check the selector of the previous number, and then prefix the feature string
with ! to denote the switch.
Finally, save out the complete feature string in \l_fontspec_feature_string_tl.
1422 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_make_AAT_feature_string :nn {TF,T,F}
1423 {

```

```

1424 \tl_set:Nx \l_tmpa_tl { \XeTeXfeaturename \l_fontspec_font #1 }
1425 \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_tmpa_tl
1426 { \prg_return_false: }
1427 {
1428   \int_compare:nTF { \XeTeXisexclusivefeature\l_fontspec_font #1 > 0 }
1429   {
1430     \tl_set:Nx \l_tmpb_tl {\XeTeXselectorname\l_fontspec_font #1\space #2}
1431   }
1432   {
1433     \int_if_even:nTF {#2}
1434     {
1435       \tl_set:Nx \l_tmpb_tl {\XeTeXselectorname\l_fontspec_font #1\space #2}
1436     }
1437     {
1438       \tl_set:Nx \l_tmpb_tl
1439       {
1440         \XeTeXselectorname\l_fontspec_font #1\space \numexpr#2-1\relax
1441       }
1442       \tl_if_empty:NF \l_tmpb_tl { \tl_put_left:Nn \l_tmpb_tl { ! } }
1443     }
1444   }
1445   \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_tmpb_tl
1446   { \prg_return_false: }
1447   {
1448     \tl_set:Nx \l_fontspec_feature_string_tl { \l_tmpa_tl = \l_tmpb_tl }
1449     \prg_return_true:
1450   }
1451 }
1452 }

```

`\fontspec_iv_str_to_num:Nn` This macro takes a four character string and converts it to the numerical representation required for X<sub>Y</sub>TeX OpenType script/language/feature purposes. The output is stored in `\l_fontspec_strnum_int`.

The reason it's ugly is because the input can be of the form of any of these: 'abcd', 'abc', 'abc ', 'ab', 'ab ', etc. (It is assumed the first two chars are *always* not spaces.) So this macro reads in the string, delimited by a space; this input is padded with `\@empty`s and anything beyond four chars is snipped. The `\@empty`s then are used to reconstruct the spaces in the string to number calculation.

The variant `\fontspec_v_str_to_num:n` is used when looking at features, which are passed around with prepended plus and minus signs (e.g., +liga, -dlig); it simply strips off the first char of the input before calling the normal `\fontspec_iv_str_to_num:n`.

```

1453 \cs_set:Nn \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:Nn
1454 {
1455   \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:w #1 \q_nil #2 \c_empty_tl \c_empty_tl \q_nil
1456 }
1457 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:w #1 \q_nil #2#3#4#5#6 \q_nil
1458 {
1459   \int_set:Nn #1
1460   {
1461     '#2 * "1000000
1462     + '#3 * "10000
1463     + \ifx \c_empty_tl #4 32 \else '#4 \fi * "100

```

```

1464     + \ifx \c_empty_tl #5 32 \else ‘#5 \fi
1465   }
1466 }
1467 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \fontspec_iv_str_to_num :Nn {No}
1468 \cs_set :Nn \fontspec_v_str_to_num :Nn
1469 {
1470   \bool_if :nTF
1471   {
1472     \tl_if_head_eq_charcode_p :nN {#2} {+} ||
1473     \tl_if_head_eq_charcode_p :nN {#2} {-}
1474   }
1475   { \fontspec_iv_str_to_num :No #1 { \use_none :n #2 } }
1476   { \fontspec_iv_str_to_num :Nn #1 {#2} }
1477 }

```

`\fontspec_check_script :nTF` This macro takes an OpenType script tag and checks if it exists in the current font. The output boolean is `\@tempswatrue`. `\l_fontspec_strnum_int` is used to store the number corresponding to the script tag string.

```

1478 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_check_script :n {TF}
1479 \< *xetex \>
1480 {
1481   \fontspec_iv_str_to_num :Nn \l_fontspec_strnum_int {#1}
1482   \int_set :Nn \l_tmpb_int { \XeTeXOTcountscripts \l_fontspec_font }
1483   \int_zero :N \l_tmpa_int
1484   \@tempswafalse
1485   \bool_until_do :nn { \int_compare_p :nNn \l_tmpa_int = \l_tmpb_int }
1486   {
1487     \ifnum \XeTeXOTscripttag\l_fontspec_font \l_tmpa_int = \l_fontspec_strnum_int
1488       \@tempswatrue
1489       \int_set :Nn \l_tmpa_int {\l_tmpb_int}
1490     \else
1491       \int_incr :N \l_tmpa_int
1492     \fi
1493   }
1494   \if@tempswa \prg_return_true : \else : \prg_return_false : \fi :
1495 }
1496 \< /xetex \>
1497 \< *luatex \>
1498 {
1499   \directlua{fontspec.check_ot_script("l_fontspec_font", "#1")}
1500   \if@tempswa \prg_return_true : \else : \prg_return_false : \fi :
1501 }
1502 \< /luatex \>

```

`\fontspec_check_lang :nTF` This macro takes an OpenType language tag and checks if it exists in the current font/script. The output boolean is `\@tempswatrue`. `\l_fontspec_strnum_int` is used to store the number corresponding to the language tag string. The script used is whatever’s held in `\l_fontspec_script_int`. By default, that’s the number corresponding to ‘latn’.

```

1503 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_check_lang :n {TF}
1504 \< *xetex \>
1505 {
1506   \fontspec_iv_str_to_num :Nn \l_fontspec_strnum_int {#1}

```

```

1507 \int_set :Nn \l_tmpb_int
1508 { \XeTeXOTcountlanguages \l_fontspec_font \l_fontspec_script_int }
1509 \int_zero :N \l_tmpa_int
1510 \@tempswafalse
1511 \bool_until_do :nn { \int_compare_p :nNn \l_tmpa_int = \l_tmpb_int }
1512 {
1513   \ifnum\XeTeXOTlanguage\l_fontspec_font\l_fontspec_script_int \l_tmpa_int =\l_fontspec_strnum
1514     \@tempswatrue
1515     \int_set :Nn \l_tmpa_int {\l_tmpb_int}
1516   \else
1517     \int_incr :N \l_tmpa_int
1518   \fi
1519 }
1520 \if@tempswa \prg_return_true : \else : \prg_return_false : \fi :
1521 }
1522 \</xetex>
1523 \<*luatex>
1524 {
1525   \directlua
1526   {
1527     fontspec.check_ot_lang( "l_fontspec_font", "#1", "\l_fontspec_script_tl" )
1528   }
1529   \if@tempswa \prg_return_true : \else : \prg_return_false : \fi :
1530 }
1531 \</luatex>

```

`\fontspec_check_ot_feat :nTF` This macro takes an OpenType feature tag and checks if it exists in the current font/script/language.  
`\fontspec_check_ot_feat :nT` The output boolean is `\@tempswa`. `\l_fontspec_strnum_int` is used to store the number corresponding to the feature tag string. The script used is whatever's held in `\l_fontspec_script_int`. By default, that's the number corresponding to 'latn'. The language used is `\l_fontspec_language_int`, by default 0, the 'default language'.

```

1532 \prg_new_conditional :Nnn \fontspec_check_ot_feat :n {TF,T}
1533 \<*xetex>
1534 {
1535   \int_set :Nn \l_tmpb_int
1536   {
1537     \XeTeXOTcountfeatures \l_fontspec_font
1538                           \l_fontspec_script_int
1539                           \l_fontspec_language_int
1540   }
1541   \fontspec_v_str_to_num :Nn \l_fontspec_strnum_int {#1}
1542   \int_zero :N \l_tmpa_int
1543   \@tempswafalse
1544   \bool_until_do :nn { \int_compare_p :nNn \l_tmpa_int = \l_tmpb_int }
1545   {
1546     \ifnum\XeTeXOTfeaturetag\l_fontspec_font\l_fontspec_script_int\l_fontspec_language_int
1547       \l_tmpa_int =\l_fontspec_strnum_int
1548       \@tempswatrue
1549       \int_set :Nn \l_tmpa_int {\l_tmpb_int}
1550     \else
1551       \int_incr :N \l_tmpa_int
1552     \fi

```

```

1553   }
1554   \if@tempswa \prg_return_true : \else : \prg_return_false : \fi :
1555 }
1556 \</xetex>
1557 \<*/luatex>
1558 {
1559   \directlua
1560   {
1561     fontspec.check_ot_feat(
1562       "l_fontspec_font", "#1",
1563       "l_fontspec_lang_tl", "l_fontspec_script_tl"
1564     )
1565   }
1566   \if@tempswa \prg_return_true : \else : \prg_return_false : \fi :
1567 }
1568 \</luatex>

```

## 23.6 keyval definitions

This is the tedious section where we correlate all possible (eventually) font feature requests with their X<sub>Y</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X representations.

```

1569 \cs_new :Nn \@@_keys_define_code :nnn
1570 {
1571   \keys_define :nn {#1} { #2 .code :n = {#3} }
1572 }

```

### 23.6.1 Pre-parsing naming information

These features are extracted from the font feature list before all others.

**ExternalLocation** For fonts that aren't installed in the system. If no argument is given, the font is located with `kpsewhich`; it's either in the current directory or the T<sub>E</sub>X tree. Otherwise, the argument given defines the file path of the font.

```

1573 \bool_new :N \l_@@_external_bool
1574 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {ExternalLocation}
1575 {
1576   \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_nobf_bool
1577   \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_noit_bool
1578   \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_external_bool
1579   \cs_set :Npn \@@_namewrap :n ##1 { [ #1 ##1 ] }
1580 \<*/xetex>
1581 \keys_set :nn {fontspec-renderer} {Renderer=OpenType}
1582 \</xetex>
1583 }
1584 \aliasfontfeature{ExternalLocation}{Path}

```

**Extension** For fonts that aren't installed in the system. Specifies the font extension to use.

```

1585 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {Extension}
1586 {
1587   \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_extension_tl {#1}

```



```

1588 \bool_if :NF \l_@@_external_bool
1589 {
1590   \keys_set :nn {fontspec-prepare-external} {ExternalLocation}
1591 }
1592 }
1593 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_extension_tl

```

### 23.6.2 Pre-parsed features

After the font name(s) have been sorted out, now need to extract any renderer/font configuration features that need to be processed before all other font features.

**Renderer** This feature must be processed before all others (the other font shape and features options are also pre-parsed for convenience) because the renderer determines the format of the features and even whether certain features are available.

```

1594 \keys_define :nn {fontspec-renderer}
1595 {
1596   Renderer .choices :nn =
1597     {AAT,ICU,OpenType,Graphite,Full,Basic}
1598   {
1599     \int_compare :nTF {\l_keys_choice_int <= 4} {
1600 \*xetexx)
1601       \tl_set :Nv \l_fontspec_renderer_tl
1602         { g_fontspec_renderer_tag_ \l_keys_choice_tl }
1603 \*xetexx)
1604 \*luatex)
1605       \@@_warning :nx {only-xetex-feature} {Renderer=AAT/OpenType/Graphite}
1606 \*luatex)
1607     }
1608     {
1609 \*xetexx)
1610       \@@_warning :nx {only-luatex-feature} {Renderer=Full/Basic}
1611 \*xetexx)
1612 \*luatex)
1613       \tl_set :Nv \l_fontspec_mode_tl
1614         { g_fontspec_mode_tag_ \l_keys_choice_tl }
1615 \*luatex)
1616     }
1617   }
1618 }
1619 \tl_set :cn {g_fontspec_renderer_tag_AAT} {/AAT}
1620 \tl_set :cn {g_fontspec_renderer_tag_ICU} {/OT}
1621 \tl_set :cn {g_fontspec_renderer_tag_OpenType} {/OT}
1622 \tl_set :cn {g_fontspec_renderer_tag_Graphite} {/GR}
1623 \tl_set :cn {g_fontspec_mode_tag_Full} {node}
1624 \tl_set :cn {g_fontspec_mode_tag_Basic} {base}

```

**OpenType script/language** See later for the resolutions from fontspec features to OpenType definitions.

```

1625 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-prepare} {Script}
1626 {

```

```

1627 \xetexx \keys_set :nn {fontspec-renderer} {Renderer=OpenType}
1628 \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_script_name_tl {#1}
1629 }

```

Exactly the same :

```

1630 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-prepare} {Language}
1631 {
1632 \xetexx \keys_set :nn {fontspec-renderer} {Renderer=OpenType}
1633 \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_lang_name_tl {#1}
1634 }

```

### 23.6.3 Bold/italic choosing options

The Bold, Italic, and BoldItalic features are for defining explicitly the bold and italic fonts used in a font family.

**Bold (NFSS) Series** By default, fontspec uses the default bold series, `\bfdefault`. We want to be able to make this extensible.

```

1635 \seq_new :N \g_@@_bf_series_seq
1636 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-prepare-external} {BoldSeries}
1637 {
1638 \tl_gset :Nx \g_@@_curr_series_tl { #1 }
1639 \seq_gput_right :Nx \g_@@_bf_series_seq { #1 }
1640 }

```

**Fonts Upright:**

```

1641 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-prepare-external} {UprightFont}
1642 {
1643 \fontspec_complete_fontname :Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl {#1}
1644 }
1645 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-prepare-external} {FontName}
1646 {
1647 \fontspec_complete_fontname :Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl {#1}
1648 }

```

**Bold:**

```

1649 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \tl_if_eq :nnT {ox}
1650 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \prop_put :Nnn {NxV}
1651 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-prepare-external} {BoldFont}
1652 {
1653 \tl_if_empty :nTF {#1}
1654 {
1655 \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_nobf_bool
1656 }
1657 {
1658 \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_nobf_bool
1659 \fontspec_complete_fontname :Nn \l_@@_curr_bfname_tl {#1}
1660
1661 \seq_if_empty :NT \g_@@_bf_series_seq
1662 {
1663 \tl_gset :Nx \g_@@_curr_series_tl {\bfdefault}
1664 \seq_put_right :Nx \g_@@_bf_series_seq {\bfdefault}

```

```

1665     }
1666     \tl_if_eq :oT \g_@@_curr_series_tl {\bfdefault}
1667     { \tl_set_eq :NN \l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl \l_@@_curr_bfname_tl }
1668
1669 <debug>\typeout{Setting~bold~font~"\l_@@_curr_bfname_tl"~with~series~"\g_@@_curr_series_tl"}
1670
1671     \prop_put :NxV \l_@@_nfss_prop
1672     {BoldFont-\g_@@_curr_series_tl} \l_@@_curr_bfname_tl
1673
1674 }
1675 }
1676 \prop_new :N \l_@@_nfss_prop

```

Same for italic :

```

1677 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {ItalicFont}
1678 {
1679   \tl_if_empty :nTF {#1}
1680   {
1681     \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_noit_bool
1682   }
1683   {
1684     \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_noit_bool
1685     \fontspec_complete_fontname :Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_it_tl {#1}
1686   }
1687 }

```

Simpler for bold+italic & slanted :

```

1688 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {BoldItalicFont}
1689 {
1690   \fontspec_complete_fontname :Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl {#1}
1691 }
1692 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {SlantedFont}
1693 {
1694   \fontspec_complete_fontname :Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_sl_tl {#1}
1695 }
1696 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse-external} {BoldSlantedFont}
1697 {
1698   \fontspec_complete_fontname :Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_bfsl_tl {#1}
1699 }

```

Small caps isn't pre-parsed because it can vary with others above :

```

1700 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {SmallCapsFont}
1701 {
1702   \tl_if_empty :nTF {#1}
1703   {
1704     \bool_set_true :N \l_@@_nosc_bool
1705   }
1706   {
1707     \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_nosc_bool
1708     \fontspec_complete_fontname :Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_sc_tl {#1}
1709   }
1710 }

```

`fontspec_complete_fontname :Nn` This macro defines #1 as the input with any \* tokens of its input replaced by the font name. This lets us define supplementary fonts in full (“Baskerville Semibold”) or in abbreviation (“\* Semibold”).

```
1711 \cs_set :Nn \fontspec_complete_fontname :Nn
1712 {
1713   \tl_set :Nx #1 {#2}
1714   \tl_replace_all :Nnx #1 {*} {\l_@@_basename_tl}
1715 \luatex \tl_remove_all :Nn #1 {~}
1716 }
1717 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \tl_replace_all :Nnn {Nnx}
```

## Features

```
1718 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse} {UprightFeatures}
1719 {
1720   \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_up_clist {#1}
1721 }
1722 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse} {BoldFeatures}
1723 {
1724   \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_bf_clist {#1}
1725 }
1726 % \prop_put :NxV \l_@@_nfss_prop
1727 % {BoldFont-\g_@@_curr_series_tl} \l_@@_curr_bfname_tl
1728 }
1729 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse} {ItalicFeatures}
1730 {
1731   \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_it_clist {#1}
1732 }
1733 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse} {BoldItalicFeatures}
1734 {
1735   \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist {#1}
1736 }
1737 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse} {SlantedFeatures}
1738 {
1739   \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_sl_clist {#1}
1740 }
1741 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse} {BoldSlantedFeatures}
1742 {
1743   \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_bfsl_clist {#1}
1744 }
```

Note that small caps features can vary by shape, so these in fact *aren’t* pre-parsed.

```
1745 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {SmallCapsFeatures}
1746 {
1747   \bool_if :NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
1748   {
1749     \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_sc_clist {#1}
1750   }
1751 }
```

paragraphFeatures varying by size

```
1752 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec-preparse} {SizeFeatures}
1753 {
```

```

1754 \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_sizefeat_clist {#1}
1755 \clist_put_right:Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_up_clist { SizeFeatures = {#1} }
1756 }
1757 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-nested} {SizeFeatures}
1758 {
1759 \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_sizefeat_clist {#1}
1760 \tl_if_empty:NT \l_@@_this_font_tl
1761 { \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_this_font_tl { -- } } % needs to be non-empty as a flag
1762 }
1763 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse-nested} {Font}
1764 {
1765 \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_this_font_tl {#1}
1766 }
1767 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {SizeFeatures}
1768 {
1769 % dummy
1770 }
1771 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {Font}
1772 {
1773 % dummy
1774 }
1775 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-sizing} {Size}
1776 {
1777 \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_size_tl {#1}
1778 }
1779 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-sizing} {Font}
1780 {
1781 \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_@@_sizedfont_tl {#1}
1782 }

```

### 23.6.4 Font-independent features

These features can be applied to any font.

**NFSS family** Interactions with other packages will sometimes require setting the NFSS family explicitly. (By default fontspec auto-generates one based on the font name.)

```

1783 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec-preparse} {NFSSFamily}
1784 {
1785 \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_nfss_fam_tl { #1 }
1786 \cs_undefine:c {g_@@_UID_\l_@@_fontid_tl}
1787 \tl_if_exist:NT \l_fontspec_family_tl
1788 { \cs_undefine:c {g_@@_\l_fontspec_family_tl _prop} }
1789 }

```

**NFSS series/shape** This option looks similar in name but has a very different function.

```

1790 \prop_new:N \l_@@_nfssfont_prop
1791 \@@_keys_define_code:nnn {fontspec} {FontFace}
1792 {
1793 \tl_set:No \l_@@_arg_tl { \use_iii:nnn #1 }
1794 \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_this_feat_tl \l_@@_arg_tl
1795 \tl_clear:N \l_@@_this_font_tl

```

```

1796 \int_compare :nT { \clist_count :N \l_@@_arg_tl = 1 }
1797 {
1798 (*debug)
1799 \typeout{FontFace~ parsing :~ one~ clist~ item}
1800 </debug>
1801 \tl_if_in :NnF \l_@@_arg_tl {=}
1802 {
1803 (*debug)
1804 \typeout{FontFace~ parsing :~ no~ equals~ =>~ font~ name~ only}
1805 </debug>
1806 \tl_set_eq :NN \l_@@_this_font_tl \l_@@_arg_tl
1807 \tl_clear :N \l_@@_this_feat_tl
1808 }
1809 }
1810
1811 \@@_add_nfssfont :oooo
1812 {\use_i :nnn #1}{\use_ii :nnn #1}{\l_@@_this_font_tl}{\l_@@_this_feat_tl}
1813 }

```

```

\@@_add_nfssfont :nnnn #1 : series
#2 : shape
#3 : fontname
#4 : fontspec features

```

```

1814 \cs_new :Nn \@@_add_nfssfont :nnnn
1815 {
1816 \tl_set :Nx \l_@@_this_font_tl {#3}
1817
1818 \tl_if_empty :xTF {#4}
1819 { \clist_set :Nn \l_@@_sizefeat_clist {Size={-}} }
1820 { \keys_set_known :noN {fontspec-preparse-nested} {#4} \l_@@_tmp_tl }
1821
1822 \tl_if_empty :NF \l_@@_this_font_tl
1823 {
1824 \prop_put :Nxx \l_@@_nfssfont_prop {#1/#2}
1825 { {#1}{#2}{\l_@@_this_font_tl}{#4}{\l_@@_sizefeat_clist} }
1826 }
1827 }
1828 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \@@_add_nfssfont :nnnn {ooo}
1829 \cs_generate_variant :Nn \@@_add_nfssfont :nnnn {oooo}

```

**Scale** If the input isn't one of the pre-defined string options, then it's gotta be numerical. `\fontspec_calc_scale:n` does all the work in the auto-scaling cases.

```

1830 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {Scale}
1831 {
1832 \str_case :nnF {#1}
1833 {
1834 {MatchLowercase} { \@@_calc_scale :n {5} }
1835 {MatchUppercase} { \@@_calc_scale :n {8} }
1836 }
1837 { \tl_set :Nx \l_@@_scale_tl {#1} }
1838 \tl_set :Nx \l_@@_scale_tl { s*[ \l_@@_scale_tl ] }

```

```
1839 }
```

`\@@_calc_scale :n` This macro calculates the amount of scaling between the default roman font and the (default shape of) the font being selected such that the font dimension that is input is equal for both. The only font dimensions that justify this are 5 (lowercase height) and 8 (uppercase height in X<sub>Y</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X).

This script is executed for every extra shape, which seems wasteful, but allows alternate italic shapes from a separate font, say, to be loaded and to be auto-scaled correctly. Even if this would be ugly.

```
1840 \cs_new :Nn \@@_calc_scale :n
1841 {
1842   \group_begin :
1843     \rmfamily
1844     \@@_set_font_dimen :NnN \l_@@_tmpa_dim {#1} \font
1845     \@@_set_font_dimen :NnN \l_@@_tmpb_dim {#1} \l_fontspec_font
1846     \tl_gset :Nx \l_@@_scale_tl
1847     {
1848       \fp_eval :n { \dim_to_fp :n {\l_@@_tmpa_dim} /
1849         \dim_to_fp :n {\l_@@_tmpb_dim} }
1850     }
1851     \@@_info :n {set-scale}
1852   \group_end :
1853 }
```

`\@@_set_font_dimen :NnN` This function sets the dimension #1 (for font #3) to ‘fontdimen’ #2 for either font dimension 5 (x-height) or 8 (cap-height). If, for some reason, these return an incorrect ‘zero’ value (as `\fontdimen8` might for a .tfm font), then we cheat and measure the height of a glyph. We assume in this case that the font contains either an ‘X’ or an ‘x’.

```
1854 \cs_new :Nn \@@_set_font_dimen :NnN
1855 {
1856   \dim_set :Nn #1 { \fontdimen #2 #3 }
1857   \dim_compare :nNnT #1 = {0pt}
1858   {
1859     \settoheight #1
1860     {
1861       \str_if_eq :nnTF {#3} {\font} \rmfamily #3
1862       \int_case :nnn #2
1863       {
1864         {5} {x} % x-height
1865         {8} {X} % cap-height
1866       } { ? } % "else" clause ; never reached.
1867     }
1868   }
1869 }
```

**Inter-word space** These options set the relevant `\fontdimens` for the font being loaded.

```
1870 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {WordSpace}
1871 {
1872   \bool_if :NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
1873   { \_fontspec_parse_wordspace :w #1,,,\q_stop }
1874 }
```

`\_fontspec_parse_wordspace :w` This macro determines if the input to `WordSpace` is of the form `{X}` or `{X,Y,Z}` and executes the font scaling. If the former input, it executes `{X,X,X}`.

```

1875 \cs_set :Npn \_fontspec_parse_wordspace :w #1,#2,#3,#4 \q_stop
1876 {
1877   \tl_if_empty :nTF {#4}
1878   {
1879     \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_wordspace_adjust_tl
1880     {
1881       \fontdimen 2 \font = #1 \fontdimen 2 \font
1882       \fontdimen 3 \font = #1 \fontdimen 3 \font
1883       \fontdimen 4 \font = #1 \fontdimen 4 \font
1884     }
1885   }
1886   {
1887     \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_wordspace_adjust_tl
1888     {
1889       \fontdimen 2 \font = #1 \fontdimen 2 \font
1890       \fontdimen 3 \font = #2 \fontdimen 3 \font
1891       \fontdimen 4 \font = #3 \fontdimen 4 \font
1892     }
1893   }
1894 }

```

**Punctuation space** Scaling factor for the nominal `\fontdimen#7`.

```

1895 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {PunctuationSpace}
1896 {
1897   \str_case_x :nnF {#1}
1898   {
1899     {WordSpace}
1900     {
1901       \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl
1902       { \fontdimen 7 \font = 0 \fontdimen 2 \font }
1903     }
1904     {TwiceWordSpace}
1905     {
1906       \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl
1907       { \fontdimen 7 \font = 1 \fontdimen 2 \font }
1908     }
1909   }
1910   {
1911     \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_punctspace_adjust_tl
1912     { \fontdimen 7 \font = #1 \fontdimen 7 \font }
1913   }
1914 }

```

**Secret hook into the font-adjustment code**

```

1915 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {FontAdjustment}
1916 {
1917   \tl_put_right :Nx \l_@@_postadjust_tl {#1}
1918 }

```



## Letterspacing

```
1919 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {LetterSpace}
1920 {
1921   \@@_update_featstr :n {letterspace=#1}
1922 }
```

**Hyphenation character** This feature takes one of three arguments : ‘None’, *<glyph>*, or *<slot>*. If the input isn’t the first, and it’s one character, then it’s the second; otherwise, it’s the third.

```
1923 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {HyphenChar}
1924 {
1925   \str_if_eq :nnTF {#1} {None}
1926   {
1927     \tl_put_right :Nn \l_@@_postadjust_tl
1928       { \hyphenchar \font = \c_minus_one }
1929   }
1930   {
1931     \tl_if_single :nTF {#1}
1932     { \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl {‘#1’} }
1933     { \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl { #1} }
1934     \font_glyph_if_exist :NnTF \l_fontspec_font {\l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl}
1935     {
1936       \tl_put_right :Nn \l_@@_postadjust_tl
1937     }
1938     { \hyphenchar \font = \l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl \scan_stop : }
1939   }
1940 }
1941 {
1942   \hyphenchar \font = \c_zero
1943   \int_set :Nn \luatex_prehyphenchar :D { \l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl }
1944 }
1945 }
1946 }
1947 { \@@_error :nx {no-glyph}{#1} }
1948 }
1949 }
```

**Color** Hooks into `pkgxcolor`, which names its colours `\color@<name>`.

```
1950 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {Color}
1951 {
1952   \cs_if_exist :cTF { \token_to_str :N \color@ #1 }
1953   {
1954     \convertcolorspec{named}{#1}{HTML}\l_@@_hexcol_tl
1955   }
1956   {
1957     \int_compare :nTF { \tl_count :n {#1} == 6 }
1958     { \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_hexcol_tl {#1} }
1959     {
1960       \int_compare :nTF { \tl_count :n {#1} == 8 }
1961       { \fontspec_parse_colour :viii #1 }
1962       {
```

```

1963         \bool_if :NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
1964         { \@@_warning :nx {bad-colour} {#1} }
1965     }
1966 }
1967 }
1968 }
1969 \cs_set :Npn \fontspec_parse_colour :viii #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8
1970 {
1971     \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_hexcol_tl {#1#2#3#4#5#6}
1972     \tl_if_eq :NNF \l_@@_opacity_tl \g_@@_opacity_tl
1973     {
1974         \bool_if :NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
1975         { \@@_warning :nx {opa-twice-col} {#7#8} }
1976     }
1977     \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_opacity_tl {#7#8}
1978 }
1979 \aliasfontfeature{Color}{Colour}

1980 \int_new :N \l_@@_tmp_int
1981 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {Opacity}
1982 {
1983     \int_set :Nn \l_@@_tmp_int {255}
1984     \@@_int_mult_truncate :Nn \l_@@_tmp_int { #1 }
1985     \tl_if_eq :NNF \l_@@_opacity_tl \g_@@_opacity_tl
1986     {
1987         \bool_if :NF \l_@@_firsttime_bool
1988         { \@@_warning :nx {opa-twice} {#1} }
1989     }
1990     \tl_set :Nx \l_@@_opacity_tl
1991     {
1992         \int_compare :nT { \l_@@_tmp_int <= "F } {0} % zero pad
1993         \int_to_hexadecimal :n { \l_@@_tmp_int }
1994     }
1995 }

```

## Mapping

```

1996 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {Mapping}
1997 < *xetex >
1998 {
1999     \@@_update_featstr :n { mapping = #1 }
2000 }
2001 < /xetex >
2002 < *luatex >
2003 {
2004     \str_if_eq :nnTF {#1} {tex-text}
2005     {
2006         \@@_warning :n {no-mapping-ligtex}
2007         \msg_redirect_name :nnn {fontspec} {no-mapping-ligtex} {none}
2008         \keys_set :nn {fontspec} { Ligatures=TeX }
2009     }
2010     { \@@_warning :n {no-mapping} }
2011 }

```

2012  $\langle$ /luatex $\rangle$

### FeatureFile

```
2013 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {FeatureFile}
2014 {
2015   \@@_update_featstr :n { featurefile = #1 }
2016 }
```

### 23.6.5 Continuous font axes

```
2017 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {Weight}
2018 {
2019   \@@_update_featstr :n{weight=#1}
2020 }
2021 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {Width}
2022 {
2023   \@@_update_featstr :n{width=#1}
2024 }
2025 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {OpticalSize}
2026  $\langle$ *xetex $\rangle$ 
2027 {
2028   \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
2029   {
2030     \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_optical_size_tl {/ S = #1}
2031   }
2032   {
2033     \bool_if :NT \l_@@_mm_bool
2034     {
2035       \@@_update_featstr :n { optical size = #1 }
2036     }
2037   }
2038   \bool_if :nT { !\l_@@_ot_bool && !\l_@@_mm_bool }
2039   {
2040     \bool_if :NT \l_@@_firsttime_bool
2041     { \@@_warning :n {no-opticals} }
2042   }
2043 }
2044  $\langle$ /xetex $\rangle$ 
2045  $\langle$ *luatex $\rangle$ 
2046 {
2047   \tl_set :Nn \l_@@_optical_size_tl {/ S = #1}
2048 }
2049  $\langle$ /luatex $\rangle$ 
```

### 23.6.6 Font transformations

These are to be specified to apply directly to a font shape :

```
2050 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2051 {
2052   FakeSlant .code :n =
2053   {
2054     \@@_update_featstr :n{slant=#1}
```

```

2055 },
2056 FakeSlant .default :n = {0.2}
2057 }
2058 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2059 {
2060   FakeStretch .code :n =
2061   {
2062     \@@_update_featstr :n{extend=#1}
2063   },
2064   FakeStretch .default :n = {1.2}
2065 }
2066 \xetex
2067 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2068 {
2069   FakeBold .code :n =
2070   {
2071     \@@_update_featstr :n {embolden=#1}
2072   },
2073   FakeBold .default :n = {1.5}
2074 }
2075 \xetex
2076 \luatex
2077 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2078 {
2079   FakeBold .code :n = { \@@_warning :n {fakebold-only-xetex} }
2080 }
2081 \luatex

```

These are to be given to a shape that has no real bold/italic to signal that fontspec should automatically create ‘fake’ shapes.

The behaviour is currently that only if both *AutoFakeSlant* *and* *AutoFakeBold* are specified, the bold italic is also faked.

These features presently *override* real shapes found in the font; in the future I’d like these features to be ignored in this case, instead. (This is just a bit harder to program in the current design of fontspec.)

```

2082 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2083 {
2084   AutoFakeSlant .code :n =
2085   {
2086     \bool_if :NT \l_@@_firsttime_bool
2087     {
2088       \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_fake_slant_tl {#1}
2089       \clist_put_right :Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_it_clist {FakeSlant=#1}
2090       \tl_set_eq :NN \l_fontspec_fontname_it_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
2091       \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_noit_bool
2092     }
2093     \tl_if_empty :NF \l_fontspec_fake_embolden_tl
2094     {
2095       \clist_put_right :Nx \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist
2096       {FakeBold=\l_fontspec_fake_embolden_tl}
2097       \clist_put_right :Nx \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist {FakeSlant=#1}
2098       \tl_set_eq :NN \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl

```

```

2099     }
2100   }
2101 },
2102 AutoFakeSlant .default :n = {0.2}
2103 }

  Same but reversed :
2104 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2105 {
2106   AutoFakeBold .code :n =
2107   {
2108     \bool_if :NT \l_@@_firsttime_bool
2109     {
2110       \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_fake_embolden_tl {#1}
2111       \clist_put_right :Nn \l_@@_fontfeat_bf_clist {FakeBold=#1}
2112       \tl_set_eq :NN \l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
2113       \bool_set_false :N \l_@@_nobf_bool
2114
2115       \tl_if_empty :NF \l_fontspec_fake_slant_tl
2116       {
2117         \clist_put_right :Nx \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist
2118         {FakeSlant=\l_fontspec_fake_slant_tl}
2119         \clist_put_right :Nx \l_@@_fontfeat_bfit_clist {FakeBold=#1}
2120         \tl_set_eq :NN \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
2121       }
2122     }
2123   },
2124   AutoFakeBold .default :n = {1.5}
2125 }

```

### 23.6.7 Ligatures

The call to the nested keyval family must be wrapped in braces to hide the parent list (this later requires the use of global definitions (`\xdef`) in [...]). Both `LAT` and `OpenType` names are offered to chose Rare/Discretionary ligatures.

```

2126 \@@_define_font_feature :n{Ligatures}
2127 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{Required}      {1}{0}{+rlig}
2128 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoRequired}    {1}{1}{-rlig}
2129 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{Common}        {1}{2}{+liga}
2130 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoCommon}      {1}{3}{-liga}
2131 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{Rare}          {1}{4}{+dlig}
2132 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoRare}        {1}{5}{-dlig}
2133 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{Discretionary} {1}{4}{+dlig}
2134 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoDiscretionary} {1}{5}{-dlig}
2135 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{Contextual}    {}{} {+clig}
2136 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoContextual}  {}{} {-clig}
2137 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{Historic}      {}{} {+hlig}
2138 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoHistoric}    {}{} {-hlig}
2139 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{Logos}          {1}{6} {}
2140 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoLogos}        {1}{7} {}
2141 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{Rebus}          {1}{8} {}
2142 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoRebus}        {1}{9} {}

```

```

2143 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{Diphthong}      {1}{10}{ }
2144 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoDiphthong}    {1}{11}{ }
2145 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{Squared}        {1}{12}{ }
2146 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoSquared}      {1}{13}{ }
2147 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{AbbrevSquared}   {1}{14}{ }
2148 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoAbbrevSquared}{1}{15}{ }
2149 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{Icelandic}       {1}{32}{ }
2150 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoIcelandic}     {1}{33}{ }

```

Emulate CM extra ligatures.

```

2151 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2152 {
2153   Ligatures / TeX .code :n =
2154   {
2155     \*xetexx
2156     \@@_update_featstr :n { mapping = tex-text }
2157     \*xetexx
2158     \*luatex
2159     \@@_update_featstr :n { +tlig ; +trep }
2160     \*luatex
2161   }
2162 }

```

### 23.6.8 Letters

```

2163 \@@_define_font_feature :n{Letters}
2164 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Letters}{Normal}            {3}{0}{ }
2165 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Letters}{Uppercase}         {3}{1}{+case}
2166 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Letters}{Lowercase}         {3}{2}{ }
2167 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Letters}{SmallCaps}         {3}{3}{+smcp}
2168 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Letters}{PetiteCaps}        { } { } {+pcap}
2169 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Letters}{UppercaseSmallCaps}{ } { } {+c2sc}
2170 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Letters}{UppercasePetiteCaps}{ } { } {+c2pc}
2171 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Letters}{InitialCaps}       {3}{4}{ }
2172 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Letters}{Unicase}           { } { } {+unic}
2173 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Letters}{Random}            { } { } {+rand}

```

### 23.6.9 Numbers

These were originally separated into NumberCase and NumberSpacing following AAT, but it makes more sense to combine them.

Both naming conventions are offered to select the number case.

```

2174 \@@_define_font_feature :n{Numbers}
2175 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Numbers}{Monospaced}       {6} {0}{+tnum}
2176 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Numbers}{Proportional}     {6} {1}{+pnum}
2177 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Numbers}{Lowercase}        {21}{0}{+onum}
2178 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Numbers}{OldStyle}         {21}{0}{+onum}
2179 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Numbers}{Uppercase}        {21}{1}{+lnum}
2180 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Numbers}{Lining}           {21}{1}{+lnum}
2181 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Numbers}{SlashedZero}      {14}{5}{+zero}
2182 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Numbers}{NoSlashedZero}    {14}{4}{-zero}

```

luaotload provides a custom anum feature for replacing Latin (AKA Arabic) numbers with Arabic (AKA Indic-Arabic). The same feature maps to Farsi (Persian) numbers if font

language is Farsi.

```
2183 \luatex_if_engine :T
2184 {
2185   \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Numbers}{Arabic}{ }{ }{+anum}
2186 }
```

### 23.6.10 Contextuals

```
2187 \@@_define_font_feature :n {Contextuals}
2188 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{Swash}      {} {} {+csw}
2189 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoSwash}     {} {} {-csw}
2190 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{Alternate}   {} {} {+calt}
2191 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoAlternate} {} {} {-calt}
2192 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{WordInitial} {} {} {+init}
2193 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoWordInitial} {} {} {-init}
2194 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{WordFinal}   {} {} {+fina}
2195 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoWordFinal} {} {} {-fina}
2196 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{LineInitial} {} {} {+liga}
2197 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoLineInitial} {} {} {-liga}
2198 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{LineFinal}   {} {} {+falt}
2199 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoLineFinal} {} {} {-falt}
2200 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{Inner}        {} {} {+medi}
2201 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoInner}      {} {} {-medi}
```

### 23.6.11 Diacritics

```
2202 \@@_define_font_feature :n{Diacritics}
2203 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Diacritics}{Show}         {} {} {+show}
2204 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Diacritics}{Hide}          {} {} {-hide}
2205 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Diacritics}{Decompose}     {} {} {+decomp}
2206 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Diacritics}{MarkToBase}    {} {} {+mark}
2207 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Diacritics}{NoMarkToBase}  {} {} {-mark}
2208 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Diacritics}{MarkToMark}    {} {} {+mkmk}
2209 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Diacritics}{NoMarkToMark}  {} {} {-mkmk}
2210 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Diacritics}{AboveBase}     {} {} {+abvm}
2211 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Diacritics}{NoAboveBase}   {} {} {-abvm}
2212 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Diacritics}{BelowBase}     {} {} {+blwm}
2213 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Diacritics}{NoBelowBase}   {} {} {-blwm}
```

### 23.6.12 Kerning

```
2214 \@@_define_font_feature :n{Kerning}
2215 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Kerning}{Uppercase} {} {} {+csp}
2216 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Kerning}{On} {} {} {+kern}
2217 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Kerning}{Off} {} {} {-kern}
2218 %\@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Kerning}{Vertical} {} {} {+vkern}
2219 %\@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Kerning}
2220 %   {VerticalAlternateProportional} {} {} {+vpal}
2221 %\@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Kerning}{VerticalAlternateHalfWidth} {} {} {+vhal}
```

### 23.6.13 Vertical position

```
2222 \@@_define_font_feature :n{VerticalPosition}
2223 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{VerticalPosition}{Normal} {} {} {+normal}
```

```

2224 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{VerticalPosition}{Superior} {10}{1}{+sup}
2225 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{VerticalPosition}{Inferior} {10}{2}{+sub}
2226 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{VerticalPosition}{Ordinal} {10}{3}{+ordn}
2227 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{VerticalPosition}{Numerator} {} {} {+numr}
2228 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{VerticalPosition}{Denominator} {} {} {+dnom}
2229 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{VerticalPosition}{ScientificInferior} {} {} {+sinf}

```

### 23.6.14 Fractions

```

2230 \@@_define_font_feature :n{Fractions}
2231 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Fractions}{On} {11}{1}{+frac}
2232 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Fractions}{Off} {11}{0}{-frac}
2233 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Fractions}{Diagonal} {11}{2}{}
2234 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Fractions}{Alternate} {} {} {+afrc}

```

### 23.6.15 Alternates and variants

Selected numerically because they don't have standard names. Very easy to process, very annoying for the user!

```

2235 \@@_define_font_feature :n { Alternate }
2236 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2237 {
2238   Alternate .default :n = {} ,
2239   Alternate / unknown .code :n =
2240     {
2241       \clist_map_inline :nn {#1}
2242         { \fontspec_make_feature :nnx {17}{##1} { \fontspec_salt :n {##1} } }
2243     }
2244 }

2245 \cs_set :Nn \fontspec_salt :n { +salt = #1 }

2246 \@@_define_font_feature :n {Variant}
2247 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2248 {
2249   Variant .default :n = {} ,
2250   Variant / unknown .code :n =
2251     {
2252       \clist_map_inline :nn {#1}
2253         { \fontspec_make_feature :nnx {18}{##1} { +ss \two@digits {##1} } }
2254     }
2255 }
2256 \aliasfontfeature{Variant}{StylisticSet}

2257 \@@_define_font_feature :n { CharacterVariant }
2258 \use :x
2259 {
2260   \cs_new :Npn \exp_not :N \fontspec_parse_cv :w
2261     ##1 \c_colon_str ##2 \c_colon_str ##3 \exp_not :N \q_nil
2262   {
2263     \fontspec_make_numbered_feature :xn
2264       { +cv \exp_not :N \two@digits {##1} } {##2}
2265   }
2266   \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2267   {

```



```

2268 CharacterVariant / unknown .code :n =
2269 {
2270     \clist_map_inline :nn {##1}
2271     {
2272         \exp_not :N \fontspec_parse_cv :w
2273         ###1 \c_colon_str 0 \c_colon_str \exp_not :N \q_nil
2274     }
2275 }
2276 }
2277 }

```

Possibilities : a:0:\q\_nil or a:b:0:\q\_nil.

### 23.6.16 Style

```

2278 \@@_define_font_feature :n{Style}
2279 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Style}{Alternate}    {} {} {+salt}
2280 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Style}{Italic}       {32}{2}{+ital}
2281 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Style}{Ruby}        {28}{2}{+ruby}
2282 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Style}{Swash}       {} {} {+swsh}
2283 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Style}{Historic}    {} {} {+hist}
2284 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Style}{Display}     {19}{1}{ }
2285 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Style}{Engraved}    {19}{2}{ }
2286 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Style}{TitlingCaps} {19}{4}{+titl}
2287 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Style}{TallCaps}    {19}{5}{ }
2288 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Style}{HorizontalKana}{} {} {+hkna}
2289 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Style}{VerticalKana} {} {} {+vkna}
2290 \fontspec_define_numbered_feat :nnnn {Style} {MathScript}      {+ssty} {0}
2291 \fontspec_define_numbered_feat :nnnn {Style} {MathScriptScript} {+ssty} {1}

```

### 23.6.17 CJK shape

```

2292 \@@_define_font_feature :n{CJKShape}
2293 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CJKShape}{Traditional}{20}{0} {+trad}
2294 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CJKShape}{Simplified} {20}{1} {+smpl}
2295 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CJKShape}{JIS1978}    {20}{2} {+jp78}
2296 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CJKShape}{JIS1983}    {20}{3} {+jp83}
2297 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CJKShape}{JIS1990}    {20}{4} {+jp90}
2298 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CJKShape}{Expert}     {20}{10}{+expt}
2299 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CJKShape}{NLC}        {20}{13}{+nlck}

```

### 23.6.18 Character width

```

2300 \@@_define_font_feature :n{CharacterWidth}
2301 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{Proportional}{22}{0}{+pwid}
2302 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{Full}{22}{1}{+fwid}
2303 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{Half}{22}{2}{+hwid}
2304 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{Third}{22}{3}{+twid}
2305 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{Quarter}{22}{4}{+qwid}
2306 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{AlternateProportional}{22}{5}{+palt}
2307 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{AlternateHalf}{22}{6}{+halt}
2308 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{Default}{22}{7}{ }

```

### 23.6.19 Annotation

```

2309 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Annotation}{Off}{24}{0}{}
2310 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Annotation}{Box}{24}{1}{}
2311 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Annotation}{RoundedBox}{24}{2}{}
2312 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Annotation}{Circle}{24}{3}{}
2313 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Annotation}{BlackCircle}{24}{4}{}
2314 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Annotation}{Parenthesis}{24}{5}{}
2315 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Annotation}{Period}{24}{6}{}
2316 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Annotation}{RomanNumerals}{24}{7}{}
2317 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Annotation}{Diamond}{24}{8}{}
2318 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Annotation}{BlackSquare}{24}{9}{}
2319 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Annotation}{BlackRoundSquare}{24}{10}{}
2320 \@@_define_feature_option :nnnnn{Annotation}{DoubleCircle}{24}{11}{}

2321 \@@_define_font_feature :n { Annotation }
2322 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2323 {
2324   Annotation .default :n = {0} ,
2325   Annotation / unknown .code :n =
2326     {
2327       \fontspec_make_feature :nnx {}{}{ +nalt=#1 }
2328     }
2329 }

```

### 23.6.20 Vertical

```

2330 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2331 {
2332   Vertical .choice : ,
2333   Vertical / RotatedGlyphs .code :n =
2334     {
2335       \bool_if :NTF \l_@@_ot_bool
2336       {
2337         \fontspec_make_feature :nnn{}{}{+vrt2}
2338         \@@_update_featstr :n {vertical}
2339       }
2340       {
2341         \@@_update_featstr :n {vertical}
2342       }
2343     }
2344 }

```

### 23.6.21 Script

```

2345 \newfontscript{Arabic}{arab}           \newfontscript{Armenian}{armn}
2346 \newfontscript{Balinese}{bali}         \newfontscript{Bengali}{beng}
2347 \newfontscript{Bopomofo}{bopo}        \newfontscript{Braille}{brai}
2348 \newfontscript{Buginese}{bugi}         \newfontscript{Buhid}{buhd}
2349 \newfontscript{Byzantine~Music}{byzm}
2350 \newfontscript{Canadian~Syllabics}{cans}
2351 \newfontscript{Cherokee}{cher}
2352 \newfontscript{CJK~Ideographic}{hani}  \newfontscript{Coptic}{copt}
2353 \newfontscript{Cypriot~Syllabary}{cpri} \newfontscript{Cyrillic}{cyr1}
2354 \newfontscript{Default}{DFLT}          \newfontscript{Deseret}{dsrt}
2355 \newfontscript{Devanagari}{deva}       \newfontscript{Ethiopic}{ethi}

```

2356 \newfontscript{Georgian}{geor} \newfontscript{Glagolitic}{glag}  
 2357 \newfontscript{Gothic}{goth} \newfontscript{Greek}{grek}  
 2358 \newfontscript{Gujarati}{gujr} \newfontscript{Gurmukhi}{guru}  
 2359 \newfontscript{Hangul~Jamo}{jamo} \newfontscript{Hangul}{hang}  
 2360 \newfontscript{Hanunoo}{hano} \newfontscript{Hebrew}{hebr}  
 2361 \newfontscript{Hiragana~and~Katakana}{kana}  
 2362 \newfontscript{Javanese}{java} \newfontscript{Kannada}{knda}  
 2363 \newfontscript{Kharosthi}{khar} \newfontscript{Khmer}{khmr}  
 2364 \newfontscript{Lao}{lao~} \newfontscript{Latin}{latn}  
 2365 \newfontscript{Limbu}{limb} \newfontscript{Linear~B}{linb}  
 2366 \newfontscript{Malayalam}{mlym} \newfontscript{Math}{math}  
 2367 \newfontscript{Mongolian}{mong}  
 2368 \newfontscript{Musical~Symbols}{musc} \newfontscript{Myanmar}{mymr}  
 2369 \newfontscript{N'ko}{nko~} \newfontscript{Ogham}{ogam}  
 2370 \newfontscript{Old~Italic}{ital}  
 2371 \newfontscript{Old~Persian~Cuneiform}{xpeo}  
 2372 \newfontscript{Oriya}{orya} \newfontscript{Osmanya}{osma}  
 2373 \newfontscript{Phags-pa}{phag} \newfontscript{Phoenician}{phnx}  
 2374 \newfontscript{Runic}{runr} \newfontscript{Shavian}{shaw}  
 2375 \newfontscript{Sinhala}{sinh}  
 2376 \newfontscript{Sumero-Akkadian~Cuneiform}{xsux}  
 2377 \newfontscript{Syloti~Nagri}{sylo} \newfontscript{Syriac}{syrc}  
 2378 \newfontscript{Tagalog}{tglg} \newfontscript{Tagbanwa}{tagb}  
 2379 \newfontscript{Tai~Le}{tale} \newfontscript{Tai~Lu}{talu}  
 2380 \newfontscript{Tamil}{taml} \newfontscript{Telugu}{telu}  
 2381 \newfontscript{Thaana}{thaa} \newfontscript{Thai}{thai}  
 2382 \newfontscript{Tibetan}{tibT} \newfontscript{Tifinagh}{tfng}  
 2383 \newfontscript{Ugaritic~Cuneiform}{ugar}\newfontscript{Yi}{yi~~}

For convenience :

2384 \newfontscript{Kana}{kana}  
 2385 \newfontscript{Maths}{math}  
 2386 \newfontscript{CJK}{hani}

### 23.6.22 Language

2387 \newfontlanguage{Abaza}{ABA}\newfontlanguage{Abkhazian}{ABK}  
 2388 \newfontlanguage{Adyghe}{ADY}\newfontlanguage{Afrikaans}{AFK}  
 2389 \newfontlanguage{Afar}{AFR}\newfontlanguage{Agaw}{AGW}  
 2390 \newfontlanguage{Altai}{ALT}\newfontlanguage{Amharic}{AMH}  
 2391 \newfontlanguage{Arabic}{ARA}\newfontlanguage{Aari}{ARI}  
 2392 \newfontlanguage{Arakanese}{ARK}\newfontlanguage{Assamese}{ASM}  
 2393 \newfontlanguage{Athapaskan}{ATH}\newfontlanguage{Avar}{AVR}  
 2394 \newfontlanguage{Awadhi}{AWA}\newfontlanguage{Aymara}{AYM}  
 2395 \newfontlanguage{Azeri}{AZE}\newfontlanguage{Badaga}{BAD}  
 2396 \newfontlanguage{Baghelkhandi}{BAG}\newfontlanguage{Balkar}{BAL}  
 2397 \newfontlanguage{Baule}{BAU}\newfontlanguage{Berber}{BBR}  
 2398 \newfontlanguage{Bench}{BCH}\newfontlanguage{Bible~Cree}{BCR}  
 2399 \newfontlanguage{Belarussian}{BEL}\newfontlanguage{Bemba}{BEM}  
 2400 \newfontlanguage{Bengali}{BEN}\newfontlanguage{Bulgarian}{BGR}  
 2401 \newfontlanguage{Bhili}{BHI}\newfontlanguage{Bhojpuri}{BHO}  
 2402 \newfontlanguage{Bikol}{BIK}\newfontlanguage{Bilen}{BIL}  
 2403 \newfontlanguage{Blackfoot}{BKF}\newfontlanguage{Balochi}{BLI}

2404 \newfontlanguage{Balante}{BLN}\newfontlanguage{Balti}{BLT}  
 2405 \newfontlanguage{Bambara}{BMB}\newfontlanguage{Bamileke}{BML}  
 2406 \newfontlanguage{Breton}{BRE}\newfontlanguage{Brahui}{BRH}  
 2407 \newfontlanguage{Braj~Bhasha}{BRI}\newfontlanguage{Burmese}{BRM}  
 2408 \newfontlanguage{Bashkir}{BSH}\newfontlanguage{Beti}{BTI}  
 2409 \newfontlanguage{Catalan}{CAT}\newfontlanguage{Cebuano}{CEB}  
 2410 \newfontlanguage{Chechen}{CHE}\newfontlanguage{Chaha~Gurage}{CHG}  
 2411 \newfontlanguage{Chattisgarhi}{CHH}\newfontlanguage{Chichewa}{CHI}  
 2412 \newfontlanguage{Chukchi}{CHK}\newfontlanguage{Chipewyan}{CHP}  
 2413 \newfontlanguage{Cherokee}{CHR}\newfontlanguage{Chuvash}{CHU}  
 2414 \newfontlanguage{Comorian}{CMR}\newfontlanguage{Coptic}{COP}  
 2415 \newfontlanguage{Cree}{CRE}\newfontlanguage{Carrier}{CRR}  
 2416 \newfontlanguage{Crimean~Tatar}{CRT}\newfontlanguage{Church~Slavonic}{CSL}  
 2417 \newfontlanguage{Czech}{CSY}\newfontlanguage{Danish}{DAN}  
 2418 \newfontlanguage{Dargwa}{DAR}\newfontlanguage{Woods~Cree}{DCR}  
 2419 \newfontlanguage{German}{DEU}  
 2420 \newfontlanguage{Dogri}{DGR}\newfontlanguage{Divehi}{DIV}  
 2421 \newfontlanguage{Djerma}{DJR}\newfontlanguage{Dangme}{DNG}  
 2422 \newfontlanguage{Dinka}{DNK}\newfontlanguage{Dungan}{DUN}  
 2423 \newfontlanguage{Dzongkha}{DZN}\newfontlanguage{Ebira}{EBI}  
 2424 \newfontlanguage{Eastern~Cree}{ECR}\newfontlanguage{Edo}{EDO}  
 2425 \newfontlanguage{Efik}{EFI}\newfontlanguage{Greek}{ELL}  
 2426 \newfontlanguage{English}{ENG}\newfontlanguage{Erzya}{ERZ}  
 2427 \newfontlanguage{Spanish}{ESP}\newfontlanguage{Estonian}{ETI}  
 2428 \newfontlanguage{Basque}{EUQ}\newfontlanguage{Evenki}{EVK}  
 2429 \newfontlanguage{Even}{EVN}\newfontlanguage{Ewe}{EWE}  
 2430 \newfontlanguage{French~Antillean}{FAN}  
 2431 \newfontlanguage{Farsi}{FAR}  
 2432 \newfontlanguage{Parsi}{FAR}  
 2433 \newfontlanguage{Persian}{FAR}  
 2434 \newfontlanguage{Finnish}{FIN}\newfontlanguage{Fijian}{FJI}  
 2435 \newfontlanguage{Flemish}{FLE}\newfontlanguage{Forest~Nenets}{FNE}  
 2436 \newfontlanguage{Fon}{FON}\newfontlanguage{Faroese}{FOS}  
 2437 \newfontlanguage{French}{FRA}\newfontlanguage{Frisian}{FRI}  
 2438 \newfontlanguage{Friulian}{FRL}\newfontlanguage{Futa}{FTA}  
 2439 \newfontlanguage{Fulani}{FUL}\newfontlanguage{Ga}{GAD}  
 2440 \newfontlanguage{Gaelic}{GAE}\newfontlanguage{Gagauz}{GAG}  
 2441 \newfontlanguage{Galician}{GAL}\newfontlanguage{Garshuni}{GAR}  
 2442 \newfontlanguage{Garhwali}{GAW}\newfontlanguage{Ge'ez}{GEZ}  
 2443 \newfontlanguage{Gilyak}{GIL}\newfontlanguage{Gumuz}{GMZ}  
 2444 \newfontlanguage{Gondi}{GON}\newfontlanguage{Greenlandic}{GRN}  
 2445 \newfontlanguage{Garó}{GRO}\newfontlanguage{Guarani}{GUA}  
 2446 \newfontlanguage{Gujarati}{GUJ}\newfontlanguage{Haitian}{HAI}  
 2447 \newfontlanguage{Halam}{HAL}\newfontlanguage{Harauti}{HAR}  
 2448 \newfontlanguage{Hausa}{HAU}\newfontlanguage{Hawaiian}{HAW}  
 2449 \newfontlanguage{Hammer-Banna}{HBN}\newfontlanguage{Hiligaynon}{HIL}  
 2450 \newfontlanguage{Hindi}{HIN}\newfontlanguage{High~Mari}{HMA}  
 2451 \newfontlanguage{Hindko}{HND}\newfontlanguage{Ho}{HO}  
 2452 \newfontlanguage{Harari}{HRI}\newfontlanguage{Croatian}{HRV}  
 2453 \newfontlanguage{Hungarian}{HUN}\newfontlanguage{Armenian}{HYE}  
 2454 \newfontlanguage{Igbo}{IBO}\newfontlanguage{Ijo}{IJO}

2455 \newfontlanguage{Ilokano}{ILO}\newfontlanguage{Indonesian}{IND}  
 2456 \newfontlanguage{Ingush}{ING}\newfontlanguage{Inuktitut}{INU}  
 2457 \newfontlanguage{Irish}{IRI}\newfontlanguage{Irish~Traditional}{IRT}  
 2458 \newfontlanguage{Icelandic}{ISL}\newfontlanguage{Inari~Sami}{ISM}  
 2459 \newfontlanguage{Italian}{ITA}\newfontlanguage{Hebrew}{IWR}  
 2460 \newfontlanguage{Javanese}{JAV}\newfontlanguage{Yiddish}{JII}  
 2461 \newfontlanguage{Japanese}{JAN}\newfontlanguage{Judezmo}{JUD}  
 2462 \newfontlanguage{Jula}{JUL}\newfontlanguage{Kabardian}{KAB}  
 2463 \newfontlanguage{Kachchi}{KAC}\newfontlanguage{Kalenjin}{KAL}  
 2464 \newfontlanguage{Kannada}{KAN}\newfontlanguage{Karachay}{KAR}  
 2465 \newfontlanguage{Georgian}{KAT}\newfontlanguage{Kazakh}{KAZ}  
 2466 \newfontlanguage{Kebena}{KEB}\newfontlanguage{Khutsuri~Georgian}{KGE}  
 2467 \newfontlanguage{Khakass}{KHA}\newfontlanguage{Khanty-Kazim}{KHK}  
 2468 \newfontlanguage{Khmer}{KHM}\newfontlanguage{Khanty-Shurishkar}{KHS}  
 2469 \newfontlanguage{Khanty-Vakhi}{KHV}\newfontlanguage{Khowar}{KHW}  
 2470 \newfontlanguage{Kikuyu}{KIK}\newfontlanguage{Kirghiz}{KIR}  
 2471 \newfontlanguage{Kisii}{KIS}\newfontlanguage{Kokni}{KKN}  
 2472 \newfontlanguage{Kalmyk}{KLM}\newfontlanguage{Kamba}{KMB}  
 2473 \newfontlanguage{Kumaoni}{KMN}\newfontlanguage{Komo}{KMO}  
 2474 \newfontlanguage{Komso}{KMS}\newfontlanguage{Kanuri}{KNR}  
 2475 \newfontlanguage{Kodagu}{KOD}\newfontlanguage{Korean~Old~Hangul}{KOH}  
 2476 \newfontlanguage{Konkani}{KOK}\newfontlanguage{Kikongo}{KON}  
 2477 \newfontlanguage{Komi-Permyak}{KOP}\newfontlanguage{Korean}{KOR}  
 2478 \newfontlanguage{Komi-Zyrian}{KOZ}\newfontlanguage{Kpelle}{KPL}  
 2479 \newfontlanguage{Krio}{KRI}\newfontlanguage{Karakalpak}{KRR}  
 2480 \newfontlanguage{Karelian}{KRL}\newfontlanguage{Karaim}{KRM}  
 2481 \newfontlanguage{Karen}{KRN}\newfontlanguage{Korete}{KRT}  
 2482 \newfontlanguage{Kashmiri}{KSH}\newfontlanguage{Khasi}{KSI}  
 2483 \newfontlanguage{Kildin~Sami}{KSM}\newfontlanguage{Kui}{KUI}  
 2484 \newfontlanguage{Kulvi}{KUL}\newfontlanguage{Kumyk}{KUM}  
 2485 \newfontlanguage{Kurdish}{KUR}\newfontlanguage{Kurukh}{KUU}  
 2486 \newfontlanguage{Kuy}{KUY}\newfontlanguage{Koryak}{KYK}  
 2487 \newfontlanguage{Ladin}{LAD}\newfontlanguage{Lahuli}{LAH}  
 2488 \newfontlanguage{Lak}{LAK}\newfontlanguage{Lambani}{LAM}  
 2489 \newfontlanguage{Lao}{LAO}\newfontlanguage{Latin}{LAT}  
 2490 \newfontlanguage{Laz}{LAZ}\newfontlanguage{L-Cree}{LCR}  
 2491 \newfontlanguage{Ladakhi}{LDK}\newfontlanguage{Lezgi}{LEZ}  
 2492 \newfontlanguage{Lingala}{LIN}\newfontlanguage{Low~Mari}{LMA}  
 2493 \newfontlanguage{Limbu}{LMB}\newfontlanguage{Lomwe}{LMW}  
 2494 \newfontlanguage{Lower~Sorbian}{LSB}\newfontlanguage{Lule~Sami}{LSM}  
 2495 \newfontlanguage{Lithuanian}{LTH}\newfontlanguage{Luba}{LUB}  
 2496 \newfontlanguage{Luganda}{LUG}\newfontlanguage{Luhya}{LUH}  
 2497 \newfontlanguage{Luo}{LUO}\newfontlanguage{Latvian}{LVI}  
 2498 \newfontlanguage{Majang}{MAJ}\newfontlanguage{Makua}{MAK}  
 2499 \newfontlanguage{Malayalam~Traditional}{MAL}\newfontlanguage{Mansi}{MAN}  
 2500 \newfontlanguage{Marathi}{MAR}\newfontlanguage{Marwari}{MAW}  
 2501 \newfontlanguage{Mbundu}{MBN}\newfontlanguage{Manchu}{MCH}  
 2502 \newfontlanguage{Moose~Cree}{MCR}\newfontlanguage{Mende}{MDE}  
 2503 \newfontlanguage{Me'en}{MEN}\newfontlanguage{Mizo}{MIZ}  
 2504 \newfontlanguage{Macedonian}{MKD}\newfontlanguage{Male}{MLE}  
 2505 \newfontlanguage{Malagasy}{MLG}\newfontlanguage{Malinke}{MLN}

2506 \newfontlanguage{Malayalam~Reformed}{MLR}\newfontlanguage{Malay}{MLY}  
 2507 \newfontlanguage{Mandinka}{MND}\newfontlanguage{Mongolian}{MNG}  
 2508 \newfontlanguage{Manipuri}{MNI}\newfontlanguage{Maninka}{MNK}  
 2509 \newfontlanguage{Manx~Gaelic}{MNX}\newfontlanguage{Moksha}{MOK}  
 2510 \newfontlanguage{Moldavian}{MOL}\newfontlanguage{Mon}{MON}  
 2511 \newfontlanguage{Moroccan}{MOR}\newfontlanguage{Maori}{MRI}  
 2512 \newfontlanguage{Maithili}{MTH}\newfontlanguage{Maltese}{MTS}  
 2513 \newfontlanguage{Mundari}{MUN}\newfontlanguage{Naga-Assamese}{NAG}  
 2514 \newfontlanguage{Nanai}{NAN}\newfontlanguage{Naskapi}{NAS}  
 2515 \newfontlanguage{N-Cree}{NCR}\newfontlanguage{Ndebele}{NDB}  
 2516 \newfontlanguage{Ndonga}{NDG}\newfontlanguage{Nepali}{NEP}  
 2517 \newfontlanguage{Newari}{NEW}\newfontlanguage{Nagari}{NGR}  
 2518 \newfontlanguage{Norway~House~Cree}{NHC}\newfontlanguage{Nisi}{NIS}  
 2519 \newfontlanguage{Niuean}{NIU}\newfontlanguage{Nkole}{NKL}  
 2520 \newfontlanguage{N'ko}{NKO}\newfontlanguage{Dutch}{NLD}  
 2521 \newfontlanguage{Nogai}{NOG}\newfontlanguage{Norwegian}{NOR}  
 2522 \newfontlanguage{Northern~Sami}{NSM}\newfontlanguage{Northern~Tai}{NTA}  
 2523 \newfontlanguage{Esperanto}{NTO}\newfontlanguage{Nynorsk}{NYN}  
 2524 \newfontlanguage{Oji-Cree}{OCR}\newfontlanguage{Ojibway}{OBJ}  
 2525 \newfontlanguage{Oriya}{ORI}\newfontlanguage{Oromo}{ORO}  
 2526 \newfontlanguage{Ossetian}{OSS}\newfontlanguage{Palestinian~Aramaic}{PAA}  
 2527 \newfontlanguage{Pali}{PAL}\newfontlanguage{Punjabi}{PAN}  
 2528 \newfontlanguage{Palpa}{PAP}\newfontlanguage{Pashto}{PAS}  
 2529 \newfontlanguage{Polytonic~Greek}{PGR}\newfontlanguage{Pilipino}{PIL}  
 2530 \newfontlanguage{Palaung}{PLG}\newfontlanguage{Polish}{PLK}  
 2531 \newfontlanguage{Provençal}{PRO}\newfontlanguage{Portuguese}{PTG}  
 2532 \newfontlanguage{Chin}{QIN}\newfontlanguage{Rajasthani}{RAJ}  
 2533 \newfontlanguage{R-Cree}{RCR}\newfontlanguage{Russian~Buriat}{RBU}  
 2534 \newfontlanguage{Riang}{RIA}\newfontlanguage{Rhaeto-Romanic}{RMS}  
 2535 \newfontlanguage{Romanian}{ROM}\newfontlanguage{Romany}{ROY}  
 2536 \newfontlanguage{Rusyn}{RSY}\newfontlanguage{Ruanda}{RUA}  
 2537 \newfontlanguage{Russian}{RUS}\newfontlanguage{Sadri}{SAD}  
 2538 \newfontlanguage{Sanskrit}{SAN}\newfontlanguage{Santali}{SAT}  
 2539 \newfontlanguage{Sayisi}{SAY}\newfontlanguage{Sekota}{SEK}  
 2540 \newfontlanguage{Selkup}{SEL}\newfontlanguage{Sango}{SGO}  
 2541 \newfontlanguage{Shan}{SHN}\newfontlanguage{Sibe}{SIB}  
 2542 \newfontlanguage{Sidamo}{SID}\newfontlanguage{Silte~Gurage}{SIG}  
 2543 \newfontlanguage{Skolt~Sami}{SKS}\newfontlanguage{Slovak}{SKY}  
 2544 \newfontlanguage{Slavey}{SLA}\newfontlanguage{Slovenian}{SLV}  
 2545 \newfontlanguage{Somali}{SML}\newfontlanguage{Samoan}{SMO}  
 2546 \newfontlanguage{Sena}{SNA}\newfontlanguage{Sindhi}{SND}  
 2547 \newfontlanguage{Sinhalese}{SNH}\newfontlanguage{Soninke}{SNK}  
 2548 \newfontlanguage{Sodo~Gurage}{SOG}\newfontlanguage{Sotho}{SOT}  
 2549 \newfontlanguage{Albanian}{SQI}\newfontlanguage{Serbian}{SRB}  
 2550 \newfontlanguage{Saraiki}{SRK}\newfontlanguage{Serer}{SRR}  
 2551 \newfontlanguage{South~Slavey}{SSL}\newfontlanguage{Southern~Sami}{SSM}  
 2552 \newfontlanguage{Suri}{SUR}\newfontlanguage{Svan}{SVA}  
 2553 \newfontlanguage{Swedish}{SVE}\newfontlanguage{Swadaya~Aramaic}{SWA}  
 2554 \newfontlanguage{Swahili}{SWK}\newfontlanguage{Swazi}{SWZ}  
 2555 \newfontlanguage{Sutu}{SXT}\newfontlanguage{Syriac}{SYR}  
 2556 \newfontlanguage{Tabasaran}{TAB}\newfontlanguage{Tajiki}{TAJ}

```

2557 \newfontlanguage{Tamil}{TAM}\newfontlanguage{Tatar}{TAT}
2558 \newfontlanguage{TH-Cree}{TCR}\newfontlanguage{Telugu}{TEL}
2559 \newfontlanguage{Tongan}{TGN}\newfontlanguage{Tigre}{TGR}
2560 \newfontlanguage{Tigrinya}{TGY}\newfontlanguage{Thai}{THA}
2561 \newfontlanguage{Tahitian}{THT}\newfontlanguage{Tibetan}{TIB}
2562 \newfontlanguage{Turkmen}{TKM}\newfontlanguage{Temne}{TMN}
2563 \newfontlanguage{Tswana}{TNA}\newfontlanguage{Tundra~Nenets}{TNE}
2564 \newfontlanguage{Tonga}{TNG}\newfontlanguage{Todo}{TOD}
2565 \newfontlanguage{Tsonga}{TSG}\newfontlanguage{Turoyo~Aramaic}{TUA}
2566 \newfontlanguage{Tulu}{TUL}\newfontlanguage{Tuvini}{TUV}
2567 \newfontlanguage{Twi}{TWI}\newfontlanguage{Udmurt}{UDM}
2568 \newfontlanguage{Ukrainian}{UKR}\newfontlanguage{Urdu}{URD}
2569 \newfontlanguage{Upper~Sorbian}{USB}\newfontlanguage{Uyghur}{UYG}
2570 \newfontlanguage{Uzbek}{UZB}\newfontlanguage{Venda}{VEN}
2571 \newfontlanguage{Vietnamese}{VIT}\newfontlanguage{Wa}{WA}
2572 \newfontlanguage{Wagdi}{WAG}\newfontlanguage{West-Cree}{WCR}
2573 \newfontlanguage{Welsh}{WEL}\newfontlanguage{Wolof}{WLF}
2574 \newfontlanguage{Tai~Lue}{XBD}\newfontlanguage{Xhosa}{XHS}
2575 \newfontlanguage{Yakut}{YAK}\newfontlanguage{Yoruba}{YBA}
2576 \newfontlanguage{Y-Cree}{YCR}\newfontlanguage{Yi~Classic}{YIC}
2577 \newfontlanguage{Yi~Modern}{YIM}\newfontlanguage{Chinese~Hong~Kong}{ZHH}
2578 \newfontlanguage{Chinese~Phonetic}{ZHP}
2579 \newfontlanguage{Chinese~Simplified}{ZHS}
2580 \newfontlanguage{Chinese~Traditional}{ZHT}\newfontlanguage{Zande}{ZND}
2581 \newfontlanguage{Zulu}{ZUL}

```

**Turkish** Turns out that many fonts use ‘TUR’ as their Turkish language tag rather than the specified ‘TRK’. So we check for both :

```

2582 \keys_define :nn {fontspec}
2583 {
2584   Language / Turkish .code :n =
2585   {
2586     \fontspec_check_lang :nTF {TRK}
2587     {
2588       \int_set :Nn \l_fontspec_language_int {\l_fontspec_strnum_int}
2589       \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {TRK}
2590     }
2591     {
2592       \fontspec_check_lang :nTF {TUR}
2593       {
2594         \int_set :Nn \l_fontspec_language_int {\l_fontspec_strnum_int}
2595         \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {TUR}
2596       }
2597       {
2598         \@_warning :nx {language-not-exist} {Turkish}
2599         \keys_set :nn {fontspec} {Language=Default}
2600       }
2601     }
2602   }
2603 }

```

## Default

```

2604 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec}{ Language / Default }
2605 {
2606   \tl_set :Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {DFLT}
2607   \int_zero :N \l_fontspec_language_int
2608 }

```

### 23.6.23 Raw feature string

This allows savvy Xe<sub>La</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X-ers to input font features manually if they have already memorised the OpenType abbreviations and don't mind not having error checking.

```

2609 \@@_keys_define_code :nnn {fontspec} {RawFeature}
2610 {
2611   \@@_update_featstr :n {#1}
2612 }

```

## 23.7 Italic small caps

The following code for utilising italic small caps sensibly is inspired from Philip Lehman's *The Font Installation Guide*. Note that `\upshape` needs to be used *twice* to get from italic small caps to regular upright (it always goes to small caps, then regular upright).

`\sishape` First, the commands for actually selecting italic small caps are defined. I use `si` as the NFSS shape for italic small caps, but I have seen `itsc` and `slsc` also used. `\sidefault` may be redefined to one of these if required for compatibility.

```

2613 \providecommand*\sidefault{si}
2614 \DeclareRobustCommand{\sishape}
2615 {
2616   \not@math@alphabet\sishape\relax
2617   \fontshape\sidefault\selectfont
2618 }
2619 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textsi}{\sishape}

```

`\fontspec_blend_shape` :nnn This is the macro which enables the overload on the `\.shape` commands. It takes three such arguments. In essence, the macro selects the first argument, unless the second argument is already selected, in which case it selects the third.

```

2620 \cs_new :Nn \fontspec_blend_shape :nnn
2621 {
2622   \bool_if :nTF
2623   {
2624     \str_if_eq_x_p :nn {\f@shape} {#2} &&
2625     \cs_if_exist_p :c {\f@encoding/\f@family/\f@series/#3}
2626   }
2627   { \fontshape{#3}\selectfont }
2628   { \fontshape{#1}\selectfont }
2629 }

```

`\itshape` Here the original `\.shape` commands are redefined to use the merge shape macro.

```

\scshape 2630 \DeclareRobustCommand \itshape
\upshape 2631 {
2632   \not@math@alphabet\itshape\mathit
2633   \fontspec_blend_shape :nnn\itdefault\scdefault\sidefault
2634 }

```



```

2635 \DeclareRobustCommand \slshape
2636 {
2637   \not@math@alphabet\slshape\relax
2638   \fontspec_blend_shape :nnn\sldefault\scdefault\sidefault
2639 }
2640 \DeclareRobustCommand \scshape
2641 {
2642   \not@math@alphabet\scshape\relax
2643   \fontspec_blend_shape :nnn\scdefault\itdefault\sidefault
2644 }
2645 \DeclareRobustCommand \upshape
2646 {
2647   \not@math@alphabet\upshape\relax
2648   \fontspec_blend_shape :nnn\updefault\sidefault\scdefault
2649 }

```

## 23.8 Selecting maths fonts

Here, the fonts used in math mode are redefined to correspond to the default roman, sans serif and typewriter fonts. Unfortunately, you can only define maths fonts in the preamble, otherwise I'd run this code whenever `\setmainfont` and friends was run.

`\fontspec_setup_maths` : Everything here is performed `\AtBeginDocument` in order to overwrite euler's attempt. This means `fontspec` must be loaded *after* euler. We set up a conditional to return an error if this rule is violated.

Since every maths setup is slightly different, we also take different paths for defining various math glyphs depending which maths font package has been loaded.

```

2650 \ifpackageloaded{euler}
2651 {
2652   \bool_set_true :N \g_@@_pkg_euler_loaded_bool
2653 }
2654 {
2655   \bool_set_false :N \g_@@_pkg_euler_loaded_bool
2656 }
2657 \cs_set :Nn \fontspec_setup_maths :
2658 {
2659   \ifpackageloaded{euler}
2660   {
2661     \bool_if :NTF \g_@@_pkg_euler_loaded_bool
2662     { \bool_set_true :N \g_@@_math_euler_bool }
2663     { \@_error :n {euler-too-late} }
2664   }
2665   {}
2666   \ifpackageloaded{lucbmath}{\bool_set_true :N \g_@@_math_lucida_bool}{}
2667   \ifpackageloaded{lucidabr}{\bool_set_true :N \g_@@_math_lucida_bool}{}
2668   \ifpackageloaded{lucimatx}{\bool_set_true :N \g_@@_math_lucida_bool}{}

```

Knuth's CM fonts are all squashed together, combining letters, accents, text symbols and maths symbols all in the one font, `cmr`, plus other things in other fonts. Because we are changing the roman font in the document, we need to redefine all of the maths glyphs in  $\text{\LaTeX}$ 's operators maths font to still go back to the legacy `cmr` font for all these random glyphs, unless a separate maths font package has been loaded instead.

In every case, the maths accents are always taken from the operators font, which is generally the main text font. (Actually, there is a  $\hat$  accent in EulerFraktur, but it's *ugly*. So I ignore it. Sorry if this causes inconvenience.)

```

2669 \DeclareSymbolFont{legacymaths}{OT1}{cmr}{m}{n}
2670 \SetSymbolFont{legacymaths}{bold}{OT1}{cmr}{bx}{n}
2671 \DeclareMathAccent{\acute}    {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{19}
2672 \DeclareMathAccent{\grave}    {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{18}
2673 \DeclareMathAccent{\ddot}     {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{127}
2674 \DeclareMathAccent{\tilde}    {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{126}
2675 \DeclareMathAccent{\bar}      {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{22}
2676 \DeclareMathAccent{\breve}    {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{21}
2677 \DeclareMathAccent{\check}    {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{20}
2678 \DeclareMathAccent{\hat}      {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{94} % too bad, euler
2679 \DeclareMathAccent{\dot}      {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{95}
2680 \DeclareMathAccent{\mathring}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{23}

```

**\colon : what's going on ?** Okay, so  $:$  and  $\colon$  in maths mode are defined in a few places, so I need to work out what does what. Respectively, we have :

```

% fontmath.ltx:
\DeclareMathSymbol{\colon}{\mathpunct}{operators}{"3A}
\DeclareMathSymbol{:}{\mathrel}{operators}{"3A}

% amsmath.sty:
\renewcommand{\colon}{\nobreak\mskip2mu\mathpunct{}\nonscript
\mkern-\thinmuskip{:}\mskip6mu\plus1mu\relax}

% euler.sty:
\DeclareMathSymbol{:}{\mathrel}{EulerFraktur}{"3A}

% lucbmath.sty:
\DeclareMathSymbol{@tempb}{\mathpunct}{operators}{58}
\ifx\colon@tempb
\DeclareMathSymbol{\colon}{\mathpunct}{operators}{58}
\fi
\DeclareMathSymbol{:}{\mathrel}{operators}{58}

```

(3A\_16 = 58\_10) So I think, based on this summary, that it is fair to tell fontspec to ‘replace’ the operators font with legacymaths for this symbol, except when amsmath is loaded since we want to keep its definition.

```

2681 \group_begin :
2682 \mathchardef@tempa="603A \relax
2683 \ifx\colon@tempa
2684 \DeclareMathSymbol{\colon}{\mathpunct}{legacymaths}{58}
2685 \fi
2686 \group_end :

```

The following symbols are only defined specifically in euler, so skip them if that package is loaded.

```

2687 \bool_if :NF \g_@@_math_euler_bool
2688 {
2689 \DeclareMathSymbol{!}{\mathclose}{legacymaths}{33}
2690 \DeclareMathSymbol{:}{\mathrel}{legacymaths}{58}

```

```

2691 \DeclareMathSymbol{;}{\mathpunct}{legacymaths}{59}
2692 \DeclareMathSymbol{?}{\mathclose}{legacymaths}{63}

```

And these ones are defined both in euler and lucbmath, so we only need to run this code if no extra maths package has been loaded.

```

2693 \bool_if :NF \g_@@_math_lucida_bool
2694 {
2695   \DeclareMathSymbol{0}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{‘0}
2696   \DeclareMathSymbol{1}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{‘1}
2697   \DeclareMathSymbol{2}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{‘2}
2698   \DeclareMathSymbol{3}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{‘3}
2699   \DeclareMathSymbol{4}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{‘4}
2700   \DeclareMathSymbol{5}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{‘5}
2701   \DeclareMathSymbol{6}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{‘6}
2702   \DeclareMathSymbol{7}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{‘7}
2703   \DeclareMathSymbol{8}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{‘8}
2704   \DeclareMathSymbol{9}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{‘9}
2705   \DeclareMathSymbol{\Gamma}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{0}
2706   \DeclareMathSymbol{\Delta}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{1}
2707   \DeclareMathSymbol{\Theta}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{2}
2708   \DeclareMathSymbol{\Lambda}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{3}
2709   \DeclareMathSymbol{\Xi}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{4}
2710   \DeclareMathSymbol{\Pi}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{5}
2711   \DeclareMathSymbol{\Sigma}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{6}
2712   \DeclareMathSymbol{\Upsilon}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{7}
2713   \DeclareMathSymbol{\Phi}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{8}
2714   \DeclareMathSymbol{\Psi}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{9}
2715   \DeclareMathSymbol{\Omega}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{10}
2716   \DeclareMathSymbol{+}{\mathbin}{legacymaths}{43}
2717   \DeclareMathSymbol{=}{\mathrel}{legacymaths}{61}
2718   \DeclareMathDelimiter{({\mathopen}{legacymaths}{40}{largesymbols}{0}
2719   \DeclareMathDelimiter{)}{\mathclose}{legacymaths}{41}{largesymbols}{1}
2720   \DeclareMathDelimiter{[{\mathopen}{legacymaths}{91}{largesymbols}{2}
2721   \DeclareMathDelimiter{]}\mathclose}{legacymaths}{93}{largesymbols}{3}
2722   \DeclareMathDelimiter{/}{\mathord}{legacymaths}{47}{largesymbols}{14}
2723   \DeclareMathSymbol{\mathdollar}{\mathord}{legacymaths}{36}
2724 }
2725 }

```

Finally, we change the font definitions for `\mathrm` and so on. These are defined using the `\g_@@_mathrm_tl (...)` macros, which default to `\rmdefault` but may be specified with the `\setmathrm (...)` commands in the preamble.

Since  $\text{\LaTeX}$  only generally defines one level of boldness, we omit `\mathbf` in the bold maths series. It can be specified as per usual with `\setboldmathrm`, which stores the appropriate family name in `\g_@@_bfmathrm_tl`.

```

2726 \DeclareSymbolFont{operators}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\mddefault\updefault
2727 \SetSymbolFont{operators}{normal}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\mddefault\updefault
2728 \DeclareSymbolFontAlphabet\mathrm{operators}
2729 \SetMathAlphabet\mathit{normal}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\mddefault\itdefault
2730 \SetMathAlphabet\mathbf{normal}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\bfdefault\updefault
2731 \SetMathAlphabet\mathsf{normal}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathsf_tl\mddefault\updefault
2732 \SetMathAlphabet\mathtt{normal}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathtt_tl\mddefault\updefault
2733 \SetSymbolFont{operators}{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\bfdefault\updefault

```

```

2734 \tl_if_empty :NTF \g_@@_bfmathrm_tl
2735 {
2736   \SetMathAlphabet\mathit{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathrm_tl\bfdefault\itdefault
2737 }
2738 {
2739   \SetMathAlphabet\mathrm{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_bfmathrm_tl\mddefault\updefault
2740   \SetMathAlphabet\mathbf{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_bfmathrm_tl\bfdefault\updefault
2741   \SetMathAlphabet\mathit{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_bfmathrm_tl\mddefault\itdefault
2742 }
2743 \SetMathAlphabet\mathsf{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathsf_tl\bfdefault\updefault
2744 \SetMathAlphabet\mathtt{bold}\g_fontspec_encoding_tl\g_@@_mathtt_tl\bfdefault\updefault
2745 }

```

\fontspec\_maybe\_setup\_maths : We're a little less sophisticated about not executing the maths setup if various other maths font packages are loaded. This list is based on the wonderful 'L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Font Catalogue' : <http://www.tug.dk/FontCatalogue/mathfonts.html>. I'm sure there are more I've missed. Do the T<sub>E</sub>X Gyre fonts have maths support yet?

Untested: would \unless\ifnum\Gamma=28672\relax\bool\_set\_false:N \g\_@@\_math\_bool\fi be a better test? This needs more cooperation with euler and lucida, I think.

```

2746 \cs_new :Nn \fontspec_maybe_setup_maths :
2747 {
2748   \@ifpackageloaded{anttor}
2749   {
2750     \ifx\define@antt@mathversions a\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool\fi
2751   }{}
2752   \@ifpackageloaded{arev}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2753   \@ifpackageloaded{eulervm}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2754   \@ifpackageloaded{mathdesign}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2755   \@ifpackageloaded{concmath}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2756   \@ifpackageloaded{cmbright}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2757   \@ifpackageloaded{mathesf}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2758   \@ifpackageloaded{gfsartemisla}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2759   \@ifpackageloaded{gfsneohellenic}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2760   \@ifpackageloaded{iwona}
2761   {
2762     \ifx\define@iwona@mathversions a\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool\fi
2763   }{}
2764   \@ifpackageloaded{kpfonts}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2765   \@ifpackageloaded{kmath}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2766   \@ifpackageloaded{kurier}
2767   {
2768     \ifx\define@kurier@mathversions a\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool\fi
2769   }{}
2770   \@ifpackageloaded{fouriernc}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2771   \@ifpackageloaded{fourier}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2772   \@ifpackageloaded{lmodern}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2773   \@ifpackageloaded{mathpazo}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2774   \@ifpackageloaded{mathptmx}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2775   \@ifpackageloaded{MinionPro}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2776   \@ifpackageloaded{unicode-math}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2777   \@ifpackageloaded{breqn}{\bool_set_false :N \g_@@_math_bool}{}
2778   \bool_if :NT \g_@@_math_bool

```

```

2779 {
2780   \@@_info :n {setup-math}
2781   \fontspec_setup_maths :
2782 }
2783 }
2784 \AtBeginDocument{\fontspec_maybe_setup_maths :}

```

## 23.9 Finishing up

Now we just want to set up loading the .cfg file, if it exists.

```

2785 \bool_if :NT \g_@@_cfg_bool
2786 {
2787   \InputIfFileExists{fontspec.cfg}
2788   {}
2789   {\typeout{No~ fontspec.cfg~ file~ found;~ no~ configuration~ loaded.}}
2790 }

```

## 23.10 Compatibility

\zf@enc Old interfaces. These are needed by, at least, the mathspec package.

```

\zf@family 2791 \tl_set :Nn \zf@enc { \g_fontspec_encoding_tl }
\zf@basefont 2792 \cs_set :Npn \zf@fontspec #1 #2
\zf@fontspec 2793 {
2794   \fontspec_select :nn {#1} {#2}
2795   \tl_set :Nn \zf@family { \l_fontspec_family_tl }
2796   \tl_set :Nn \zf@basefont { \l_fontspec_font }
2797 }

```

The end! Thanks for coming.

```

2798 \ExplSyntaxOff
2799 </fontspec & (xetex| luatex)>

```

## Huitième partie

# fontspec.lua

```
1  $\langle$ *lua $\rangle$ 
```

First we define some metadata.

```
2 fontspec      = fontspec or {}
3 local fontspec = fontspec
4 fontspec.module = {
5   name      = "fontspec",
6   version   = "2.3c",
7   date      = "2013/05/20",
8   description = "Advanced font selection for LuaLaTeX.",
9   author    = "Khaled Hosny, Philipp Gesang",
10  copyright  = "Khaled Hosny, Philipp Gesang",
11  license    = "LPPL"
12 }
13
14 local err, warn, info, log = luatexbase.provides_module(fontspec.module)
15
```

Some utility functions

```
16 fontspec.log      = log or (function (s) luatexbase.module_info("fontspec", s) end)
17 fontspec.warning = warn or (function (s) luatexbase.module_warning("fontspec", s) end)
18 fontspec.error    = err or (function (s) luatexbase.module_error("fontspec", s) end)
19
20 if luatexbase.catcodetables == nil then
21   latexpackage_catcodetable=luatexbase.registernumber("catcodetable@atletter")
22 else
23   latexpackage_catcodetable=luatexbase.catcodetables['latex-package']
24 end
25 function fontspec.sprint (...)
26   tex.sprint(latexpackage_catcodetable, ...)
27 end
```

The following lines check for existence of a certain script, language or feature in a given font.

```
28 local check_script  = luaotfload.aux.provides_script
29 local check_language = luaotfload.aux.provides_language
30 local check_feature  = luaotfload.aux.provides_feature
```

The following are the function that get called from T<sub>E</sub>X end.

```
31 local function tempswattrue() fontspec.sprint([[\\@tempwattrue]]) end
32 local function tempswafalse() fontspec.sprint([[\\@tempwafalse]]) end

33 function fontspec.check_ot_script(fnt, script)
34   if check_script(font.id(fnt), script) then
35     tempswattrue()
36   else
37     tempswafalse()
38   end
39 end

40 function fontspec.check_ot_lang(fnt, lang, script)
```

```

41     if check_language(font.id(fnt), script, lang) then
42         tempswattrue()
43     else
44         tempswafalse()
45     end
46 end

47 function fontspec.check_ot_feat(fnt, feat, lang, script)
48     for _, f in ipairs { "+trep", "+tlig", "+anum" } do
49         if feat == f then
50             tempswattrue()
51             return
52         end
53     end
54     if check_feature(font.id(fnt), script, lang, feat) then
55         tempswattrue()
56     else
57         tempswafalse()
58     end
59 end

60 local get_math_dimension = luaotfload.aux.get_math_dimension
61 function fontspec.mathfontdimen(fnt, str)
62     local mathdimens = get_math_dimension(fnt, str)
63     if mathdimens then
64         fontspec.sprint(mathdimens)
65         fontspec.sprint("sp")
66     else
67         fontspec.sprint("0pt")
68     end
69 end

70  $\langle$ /lua $\rangle$ 

```

## Neuvième partie

# fontspec-patches.sty

```
1 \<patches>
2 \ExplSyntaxOn
```

### 23.11 Unicode footnote symbols

This is handled by fixltx2e / L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X2015 now.

```
3 \cs_if_exist :NF \TextOrMath
4 {
5   % copy official definition :
6   \protected\expandafter\def\csname TextOrMath\space\endcsname{%
7     \ifmmode \expandafter\@secondoftwo
8     \else \expandafter\@firstoftwo \fi}
9   \edef\TextOrMath#1#2{%
10     \expandafter\noexpand\csname TextOrMath\space\endcsname
11     {#1}{#2}}
12   % translation of official definition :
13   \cs_set :Npn \fnsymbol #1
14   {
15     \int_case :nnF {#1}
16     {
17       {0} {}
18       {1} { \TextOrMath \textasteriskcentered* }
19       {2} { \TextOrMath \textdagger\dagger }
20       {3} { \TextOrMath \textdaggerdbl\ddagger }
21       {4} { \TextOrMath \textsection\mathsection }
22       {5} { \TextOrMath \textparagraph\mathparagraph }
23       {6} { \TextOrMath \textbardbl\| }
24       {7} { \TextOrMath {\textasteriskcentered\textasteriskcentered}{**} }
25       {8} { \TextOrMath {\textdagger\textdagger}{\dagger\dagger} }
26       {9} { \TextOrMath {\textdaggerdbl\textdaggerdbl}{\ddagger\ddagger} }
27     }
28     { \@ctrerr }
29   }
30 }
```

### 23.12 Emph

<pre>\em \emph \emshape \emminnershape</pre>	<p>Redefinition of <code>\em ...</code> and <code>\emph{...}</code> to use nrss info to detect when the inner shape should be used.</p> <pre>31 \DeclareRobustCommand \em 32 { 33   \@nomath\em 34   \str_if_eq_x :nnTF \f@shape \itdefault \emminnershape 35   { 36     \str_if_eq_x :nnTF \f@shape \sldefault \emminnershape \emshape 37   } 38 }</pre>
--	---



```

39 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\emph}{\em}
40 \cs_set_eq :NN \emshape \itshape
41 \cs_set_eq :NN \emminershape \upshape

```

### 23.13 \-

\- This macro is courtesy of Frank Mittelbach and the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> source code.

```

42 \DeclareRobustCommand{\-}
43 {
44   \discretionary
45   {
46     \char\ifnum\hyphenchar\font<\z@
47       \xlx@defaultthyphenchar
48     \else
49       \hyphenchar\font
50     \fi
51   }{}{}
52 }
53 \def\xlx@defaultthyphenchar{'\-\}

```

### 23.14 Verbatims

Many thanks to Apostolos Syropoulos for discovering this problem and writing the redefinition of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's verbatim environment and \verb\* command.

\fontspec\_visible\_space : Print U+2434: OPEN BOX, which is used to visibly display a space character.

```

54 \cs_new :Nn \fontspec_visible_space :
55 {
56   \font_glyph_if_exist :NnTF \font {"2423}
57   { \char"2423\scan_stop : }
58   { \fontspec_visible_space_fallback : }
59 }

```

\fontspec\_visible\_space :@fallback If the current font doesn't have U+2434: OPEN BOX, use Latin Modern Mono instead.

```

60 \cs_new :Nn \fontspec_visible_space_fallback :
61 {
62   {
63     \usefont{\g_fontspec_encoding_tl}{lmtt}{f@series}{f@shape}
64     \textvisiblespace
65   }
66 }

```

\fontspec\_print\_visible\_spaces : Helper macro to turn spaces (^20) active and print visible space instead.

```

67 \group_begin :
68 \char_set_catcode_active :n{"20}%
69 \cs_gset :Npn\fontspec_print_visible_spaces :{%
70 \char_set_catcode_active :n{"20}%
71 \cs_set_eq :NN^^20\fontspec_visible_space :%
72 }%
73 \group_end :

```

```

\verb Redefine \verb to use \fontspec_print_visible_spaces ::
\verb* 74 \def\verb
       75 {
       76   \relax\ifmmode\hbox\else\leavevmode\null\fi
       77   \bgroup
       78   \verb@eol@error \let\do\@makeother \dospecials
       79   \verbatim@font\@noligs
       80   \@ifstar\@sverb\@verb
       81 }
       82 \def\@sverb{\fontspec_print_visible_spaces : \@sverb}

       It's better to put small things into \AtBeginDocument, so here we go :
       83 \AtBeginDocument
       84 {
       85   \fontspec_patch_verbatim :
       86   \fontspec_patch_moreverb :
       87   \fontspec_patch_fancyvrb :
       88   \fontspec_patch_listings :
       89 }

verbatim* With the verbatim package.
       90 \cs_set :Npn \fontspec_patch_verbatim :
       91 {
       92   \@ifpackageloaded{verbatim}
       93   {
       94     \cs_set :cpn {verbatim*}
       95     {
       96       \group_begin : \@verbatim \fontspec_print_visible_spaces : \verbatim@start
       97     }
       98   }
       This is for vanilla LATEX.
       99   {
      100     \cs_set :cpn {verbatim*}
      101     {
      102       \@verbatim \fontspec_print_visible_spaces : \sxverbatim
      103     }
      104   }
      105 }

listingcont* This is for moreverb. The main listing* environment inherits this definition.
      106 \cs_set :Npn \fontspec_patch_moreverb :
      107 {
      108   \@ifpackageloaded{moreverb}{
      109     \cs_set :cpn {listingcont*}
      110     {
      111       \cs_set :Npn \verbatim@processline
      112       {
      113         \thelisting@line \global\advance\listing@line\c_one
      114         \the\verbatim@line\par
      115       }
      116       \@verbatim \fontspec_print_visible_spaces : \verbatim@start

```

```

117     }
118   }{}
119 }

    listings and fancvrb make things nice and easy :
120 \cs_set :Npn \fontspec_patch_fancyvrb :
121 {
122   \@ifpackageloaded{fancyvrb}
123   {
124     \cs_set_eq :NN \FancyVerbSpace \fontspec_visible_space :
125   }{}
126 }

127 \cs_set :Npn \fontspec_patch_listings :
128 {
129   \@ifpackageloaded{listings}
130   {
131     \cs_set_eq :NN \lst@visible_space \fontspec_visible_space :
132   }{}
133 }

```

## 23.15 \oldstylenums

`\oldstylenums` This command obviously needs a redefinition. And we may as well provide the reverse command.

```

\oldstylenums
\liningnums
134 \RenewDocumentCommand \oldstylenums {m}
135 {
136   { \addfontfeature{Numbers=OldStyle} #1 }
137 }
138 \NewDocumentCommand \liningnums {m}
139 {
140   { \addfontfeature{Numbers=Lining} #1 }
141 }

142 </patches>

```

## Dixième partie

# fontspec.cfg

```
1 <*cfg>
2
3 \defaultfontfeatures
4  [\rmfamily,\sffamily]
5  {Ligatures=TeX}
6
7 \defaultfontfeatures
8  [\ttfamily]
9  {WordSpace={1,0,0},
10   PunctuationSpace=WordSpace}
11
12 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
13 %%% FOR BACKWARDS COMPATIBILITY WITH PREVIOUS VERSIONS %%%
14
15 % Entries here in time may be deleted.
16 % Please advise of any problems this causes.
17
18 \aliasfontfeatureoption{Ligatures}{Historic}{Historical}
19 \let\newfontinstance\newfontfamily
20
21 </cfg>
```